Bhutan Civil Aviation Authority

Bhutan Aerodrome Standards

FOREWORD

The Bhutan Civil Aviation Authority (BCAA) is responsible under the Bhutan Civil Aviation Act of 2016 section 13 for the regulation of airports and aerodrome services, facilities and infrastructures and be responsible for oversight, safety standards and implementation process through routine surveillance audits, inspection and corrective measures.

The Bhutan Aerodrome Standards (BAS) is one mechanism that BCAA uses to meet the responsibilities of the Civil Aviation Act to ensure the safety regulation of aerodromes. This document, as a component of the state safety programme, prescribes the detailed technical requirements (aerodrome safety standards) that have been determined to be necessary for promoting and supporting aviation safety in general and aerodrome safety in particular.

ICAO Annex 14 Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPs) are contained in BAS, including the requirement that all certified aerodromes shall have a Safety Management System (SMS). Aerodromes are to be certified where international and domestic operations occur, or where air transport operations are conducted by aircraft with a passenger seating capacity greater than 20. Certified aerodromes in the Bhutan are required to have an acceptable safety management system in place.

The BAS shall be used in conjunction to Bhutan Air Navigation Regulations section 14 together with other applicable provisions of Enforcement manual, BCAA SMS manual, SSP manual and Exemption manual.

The responsibility for matters within this Manual of Standards rests with the BCAA Aerodromes. Readers should forward advice of errors, inconsistencies or suggestions as the case may be for improvement to BCAA Aerodromes.

Director General

Bhutan Civil Aviation Authority

RECORD OF AMENDMENTS

No	Date applicable	Date entered	Entered by

ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Abbreviations

ACN	Aircraft classification number
AIP	Aeronautical information publication
APAPI	Abbreviated precision approach path indicator
aprx	Approximately
ARIWS	Autonomous runway incursion warning system
ASDA	Accelerate-stop distance available
ATS	Air traffic services
AT-VASIS	Abbreviated T visual approach slope indicator system
C	Degree Celsius
CBR	California bearing ratio
cd	Candela
CIE	Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage
cm	Centimetre
CRC	Cyclic redundancy check
DME	Distance measuring equipment
FOD	Foreign object debris
ft	Foot
ILS	Instrument landing system
IMC	Instrument meteorological conditions
K	Degree Kelvin
kg	Kilogram
km	Kilometre
km/h	Kilometre per hour
kt	Knot
L	Litre
LCFZ	Laser-beam critical flight zone
LDA	Landing distance available
LFFZ	Laser-beam free flight zone
LSFZ	Laser-beam sensitive flight zone
m	Metre
max	Maximum
MLS	Microwave landing system
A-VDGS	Advanced visual docking guidance systems

Abbreviations

mm	Millimetre
mnm	Minimum
MN	Meganewton
MPa	Megapascal
MSL	Mean sea level
NFZ	Normal flight zone
NM	Nautical mile
NU	Not usable
OCA/H	Obstacle clearance altitude/height
OFZ	Obstacle free zone
OLS	Obstacle limitation surface
PAPI	Precision approach path indicator
PCN	Pavement classification number
RESA	Runway end safety area
RFF	Rescue and firefighting
RVR	Runway visual range
SMS	Safety management system
TODA	Take-off distance available
TORA	Take-off run available
T-VASIS	T visual approach slope indicator system
VMC	Visual meteorological conditions
VOR	Very high frequency omnidirectional radio range

Symbols

° Degree
= Equals
□ Minute of arc
μ Friction coefficient
> Greater than
< Less than
% Percentage
± Plus or minus

CHAPTER 1. GENERAL

Bhutan Aerodrome Standards (BAS) volume I prescribes the physical characteristics and obstacle limitation surfaces to be provided for at aerodromes, and certain facilities and technical services normally provided at an aerodrome. It also contains specifications dealing with obstacles outside those limitation surfaces. It is not intended that these specifications limit or regulate the operation of an aircraft.

To a great extent, the specifications for individual facilities detailed in BAS have been interrelated by a reference code system and by the designation of the type of runway for which they are to be provided, as specified in the definitions.

The BAS sets forth the minimum aerodrome specifications for aircraft which have the characteristics of those which are currently operating or for similar aircraft that are planned for introduction.

The BAS volume I do not include specifications relating to the overall planning of aerodromes such as impact on the environment, or to economic and other non-technical factors that need to be considered in the development of an aerodrome. Information on these subjects should be referred in the Airport Planning Manual (Doc 9184), Part 1 and guidance material on the environmental aspects of the development and operation of an aerodrome in the Airport Planning Manual (Doc 9184), Part 2.

Aviation security is an integral part of aerodrome planning and operations. BAS Volume I, contains several specifications aimed at enhancing the level of security at aerodromes. More specifications on other facilities related to security are given in ICAO's Aviation Security Manual and Annex 17.

1.1 Definitions

When the following terms are used in this Standard, they have the following meanings:

Accuracy: A degree of conformance between the estimated or measured value and the true value.

Note — For measured positional data, the accuracy is normally expressed in terms of a distance from a stated position within which there is a defined confidence of the true position falling.

Aerodrome: A defined area on land or water (including any buildings, installations and equipment) intended to be used either wholly or in part for the arrival, departure and surface movement of aircraft.

Aerodrome beacon: Aeronautical beacon used to indicate the location of an aerodrome from the air.

Aerodrome certificate: A certificate issued by the appropriate authority under applicable regulations for the operation of an aerodrome.

Aerodrome elevation: The elevation of the highest point of the landing area.

Aerodrome identification sign: A sign placed on an aerodrome to aid in identifying the aerodrome from the air.

Aerodrome mapping data (AMD): Data collected for the purpose of compiling aerodrome mapping information for aeronautical uses.

Note. — Aerodrome mapping data are collected for purposes that include the improvement of the user's situational awareness, surface navigation operations, training, charting and planning.

Aerodrome mapping database (AMDB): A collection of aerodrome mapping data organized and arranged as a structured data set.

Aerodrome reference point: The designated geographical location of an aerodrome.

Aerodrome traffic density.

a) **Light.** Where the number of movements in the mean busy hour is not greater than 15 per runway or typically less than 20 total aerodrome movements.

b) **Medium.** Where the number of movements in the mean busy hour is of the order of 16 to 25 per runway or typically between 20 to 35 total aerodrome movements.

c) **Heavy.** Where the number of movements in the mean busy hour is of the order of 26 or more per runway or typically more than 35 total aerodrome movements.

Note 1. — The number of movements in the mean busy hour is the arithmetic mean over the year of the number of movements in the daily busiest hour.

Note 2—Either a take-off or a landing constitutes a movement.

Aeronautical beacon: An aeronautical ground light visible at all azimuths, either continuously or intermittently, to designate a particular point on the surface of the earth.

Aeronautical ground light: Any light specially provided as an aid to air navigation, other than a light displayed on an aircraft.

Aeroplane reference field length: The minimum field length required for take-off at maximum certificated take-off mass, sea level, standard atmospheric conditions, still air and zero runway slope, as shown in the appropriate aeroplane flight manual prescribed by the certificating authority or equivalent data from the aeroplane manufacturer. Field length means balanced field length for aeroplanes, if applicable, or take-off distance in other cases.

Note. — Attachment A, Section 2, provides information on the concept of balanced field length and the Airworthiness Manual (Doc 9760) contains detailed guidance on matters related to take- off distance.

Aircraft classification number (ACN): A number expressing the relative effect of an-aircraft on a pavement for a specified standard sub-grade category.

Note. —The aircraft classification number is calculated with respect to the centre of gravity (CG) position which yields the critical loading on the critical gear. Normally the aft most CG position appropriate to the maximum gross apron (ramp) mass is used to calculate the ACN. In exceptional cases the forward most CG position may result in the nose gear loading being more critical.

Aircraft stand: A designated area on an apron intended to be used for parking an aircraft.

Apron: A defined area, on a land aerodrome, intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers, mail or cargo, fueling, parking or maintenance.

Apron management service: A service provided to regulate the activities and the movement of aircraft and vehicles on an apron.

Arresting system: A system designed to decelerate an aeroplane overrunning the runway.

Autonomous runway incursion warning system (ARIWS): A system which provides autonomous detection of a potential incursion or of the occupancy of an active runway and a direct warning to a flight crew or a vehicle operator.

Balked landing: A landing maneuver that is unexpectedly discontinued at any point below the obstacle clearance altitude/height (OCA/H).

Barrette: Three or more aeronautical ground lights closely spaced in a transverse line so that from a distance they appear as a short bar of light.

Calendar: Discrete temporal reference system that provides the basis for defining temporal position to a resolution of one day (ISO 19108).

Certified aerodrome: An aerodrome whose operator has been granted an aerodrome certificate.

Clearway: A defined rectangular area on the ground or water under the control of the appropriate authority, selected or prepared as a suitable area over which an aeroplane may make a portion of its initial climb to a specified height.

Cyclic redundancy check (CRC): A mathematical algorithm applied to the digital expression of data that provides a level of assurance against loss or alteration of data.

Data quality: A degree or level of confidence that the data provided meet the requirements of the data user in terms of accuracy, resolution and integrity.

Datum: Any quantity or set of quantities that may serve as a reference or basis for the calculation of other quantities (ISO 19104).

De-icing/anti-icing facility: A facility where frost, ice or snow is removed (de-icing) from the aeroplane to provide clean surfaces, and/or where clean surfaces of the aeroplane receive protection (anti-icing) against the formation of frost or ice and accumulation of snow or slush for a limited period of time.

Note. — Further guidance is given in the Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations (Doc 9640).

De-icing/anti-icing pad: An area comprising an inner area for the parking of an aeroplane to receive de-icing/anti-icing treatment and an outer area for the maneuvering of two or more mobile de-icing/anti-icing equipment.

Declared distances:

a) **Take-off run available (TORA).** The length of runway declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane taking off.

b) **Take-off distance available (TODA).** The length of the take-off run available plus the length of the clearway, if provided.

c) **Accelerate-stop distance available (ASDA**). The length of the take-off run available plus the length of the stop way, if provided.

d) **Landing distance available (LDA**). The length of runway which is declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane landing.

Dependent parallel approaches. Simultaneous approaches to parallel or near-parallel instrument runways where radar separation minima between aircraft on adjacent extended runway centre lines are prescribed.

Displaced threshold: A threshold not located at the extremity of a runway.

Effective intensity: The effective intensity of a flashing light is equal to the intensity of a fixed light of the same colour which will produce the same visual range under identical conditions of observation.

Ellipsoid height (Geodetic height): The height related to the reference ellipsoid, measured along the ellipsoidal outer normal through the point in question.

Fixed light: A light having constant luminous intensity when observed from a fixed point.

Foreign object debris (FOD): An inanimate object within the movement area which has no operational or aeronautical function and which has the potential to be a hazard to aircraft operations.

Frangible object: An object of low mass designed to break, distort or yield on impact so as to present the minimum hazard to aircraft.

Note. — Guidance on design for frangibility is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 6.

Geodetic datum: A minimum set of parameters required to define location and orientation of the local reference system with respect to the global reference system/frame.

Geoid: The equipotential surface in the gravity field of the Earth which coincides with the undisturbed mean sea level (MSL) extended continuously through the continents.

Note. —The geoid is irregular in shape because of local gravitational disturbances (wind tides, salinity, current, etc.) and the direction of gravity is perpendicular to the geoid at every point.

Geoid undulation: The distance of the geoid above (positive) or below (negative) the mathematical reference ellipsoid.

Note. — In respect to the World Geodetic System —1984 (WGS-84) defined ellipsoid, the difference between the WGS-84 ellipsoidal height and orthometric height represents WGS-84 geoid undulation.

Gregorian calendar: Calendar in general use; first introduced in 1582 to define a year that more closely approximates the tropical year than the Julian calendar (ISO 19108).

Note—In the Gregorian calendar, common years have 365 days and leap years 366 days divided into twelve sequential months.

Hazard beacon: An aeronautical beacon used to designate a danger to air navigation.

Heliport: An aerodrome or a defined area on a structure intended to be used wholly or in part for the arrival, departure and surface movement of helicopters.

Holding bay: A defined area where aircraft can be held, or bypassed, to facilitate efficient surface movement of aircraft.

Holdover time: The estimated time the anti-icing fluid (treatment) will prevent the formation of ice and frost and the accumulation of snow on the protected (treated) surfaces of an aeroplane.

Hot spot: A location on an aerodrome movement area with a history or potential risk of collision or runway incursion, and where heightened attention by pilots/drivers is necessary.

Human Factors principles: Principles which apply to aeronautical design, certification, training, operations and maintenance and which seek safe interface between the human and other system components by proper consideration to human performance.

Human performance: Human capabilities and limitations which have an impact on the safety and efficiency of aeronautical operations.

Identification beacon: An aeronautical beacon emitting a coded signal by means of which a particular point of reference can be identified.

Independent parallel approaches. Simultaneous approaches to parallel or near-parallel instrument runways where radar separation minima between aircraft on adjacent extended runway centre lines are not prescribed.

Independent parallel departures. Simultaneous departures from parallel or near-parallel instrument runways.

Instrument runway: One of the following types of runways intended for the operation of aircraft using instrument approach procedures:

a) **Non-precision approach runway**: A runway served by visual aids and non-visual aid(s) intended for landing operations following an instrument approach operation type A and a visibility not less than 1 000 m.

b) **Precision approach runway, category I**: A runway served by visual aids and non-visual aid(s) intended for landing operations following an instrument approach operation type B with a decision height (DH) not lower than 60 m (200 ft) and either a visibility not less than 800 m or a runway visual range not less than 550 m.

c) **Precision approach runway, category II**: A runway served by visual aids and non-visual aid(s) intended for landing operations following an instrument approach operation type B with a decision height (DH) lower than 60 m (200 ft) but not lower than 30 m (100 ft) and a runway visual range not less than 300 m.

d) **Precision approach runway, category III**: A runway served by visual aids and non-visual aid(s) intended for landing operations following an instrument approach operation type B to and along the surface of the runway and:

A— intended for operations with a decision height (DH) lower than 30 m (100 ft), or no decision height and a runway visual range not less than 175 m.

B— intended for operations with a decision height (DH) lower than 15 m (50 ft), or no decision height and a runway visual range less than 175 m but not less than 50 m.

C—intended for operations with no decision height (DH) and no runway visual range limitations.

Note 1—Visual aids need not necessarily be matched to the scale of non-visual aids provided. The criterion for the selection of visual aids is the conditions in which operations are intended to be conducted.

Note 2— Refer to Annex 6 —Operation of Aircraft for instrument approach operation types.

Integrity (aeronautical data): A degree of assurance that an aeronautical data and its value has not been lost nor altered since the data origination or authorized amendment.

Integrity classification (aeronautical data): Classification based upon the potential risk resulting from the use of corrupted data. Aeronautical data is classified as:

a) **routine data**: there is a very low probability when using corrupted routine data that the continued safe flight and landing of an aircraft would be severely at risk with the potential for catastrophe;

b) **essential data**: there is a low probability when using corrupted essential data that the continued safe flight and landing of an aircraft would be severely at risk with the potential for catastrophe; and

c) **critical data**: there is a high probability when using corrupted critical data that the continued safe flight and landing of an aircraft would be severely at risk with the potential for catastrophe.

Intermediate holding position: A designated position intended for traffic control at which taxiing aircraft and vehicles shall stop and hold until further cleared to proceed, when so instructed by the aerodrome control tower.

Landing area: That part of a movement area intended for the landing or take-off of aircraft.

Landing direction indicator: A device to indicate visually the direction currently designated for landing and for take-off.

Laser-beam critical flight zone (LCFZ): Airspace in the proximity of an aerodrome but beyond the LFFZ where the irradiance is restricted to a level unlikely to cause glare effects.

Laser-beam free flight zone (LFFZ): Airspace in the immediate proximity of the aerodrome where the irradiance is restricted to a level unlikely to cause any visual disruption.

Laser-beam sensitive flight zone (LSFZ): Airspace outside, and not necessarily contiguous with, the LFFZ and LCFZ where the irradiance is restricted to a level unlikely to cause flash-blindness or after-image effects.

Lighting system reliability: The probability that the complete installation operates within the specified tolerances and that the system is operationally usable.

Maneuvering area: That part of an aerodrome to be used for the take-off, landing and taxiing of aircraft, excluding aprons.

Marker: An object displayed above ground level in order to indicate an obstacle or delineate a boundary.

Marking: A symbol or group of symbols displayed on the surface of the movement area in order to convey aeronautical information.

Movement area: That part of an aerodrome to be used for the take-off, landing and taxiing of aircraft, consisting of the maneuvering area and the apron(s).

Near-parallel runways: Non-intersecting runways whose extended centre lines have an angle of convergence/divergence of 15 degrees or less.

Non-instrument runway: A runway intended for the operation of aircraft using visual approach procedures or an instrument approach procedure to a point beyond which the approach may continue in visual meteorological conditions.

Note. — Visual meteorological conditions (VMC) are described in Chapter 3 of Annex 2 — Rules of the Air.

Normal flight zone (NFZ). Airspace not defined as LFFZ, LCFZ or LSFZ but which must be protected from laser radiation capable of causing biological damage to the eye.

Obstacle: All fixed (whether temporary or permanent) and mobile objects, or parts thereof, that:

a) are located on an area intended for the surface movement of aircraft; or

b) extend above a defined surface intended to protect aircraft in flight; or

c) stand outside those defined surfaces and that have been assessed as being a hazard to air navigation.

Obstacle free zone (OFZ): The airspace above the inner approach surface, inner transitional surfaces, and balked landing surface and that portion of the strip bounded by these surfaces, which is not penetrated by any fixed obstacle other than a low-mass and frangibly mounted one required for air navigation purposes.

Orthometric height: Height of a point related to the geoid, generally presented as an MSL elevation.

Pavement classification number (PCN): A number expressing the bearing strength of a

pavement for unrestricted operations: Precision approach runway, see Instrument runway.

Primary runway(s): Runway(s) used in preference to others whenever conditions permit.

Protected flight zones: Airspace specifically designated to mitigate the hazardous effects of laser radiation.

Road: An established surface route on the movement area meant for the exclusive use of vehicles.

Road-holding position: A designated position at which vehicles may be required to hold.

Runway: A defined rectangular area on a land aerodrome prepared for the landing and take-off of aircraft.

Runway condition matrix [RCAM]: A matrix allowing an assessment of the runway condition code, using a set of procedures from an associated set of observed runway surface conditions and pilot report of braking action.

Runway condition Code [RWYCC]: A number describing the runway surface condition to be used in the runway condition report.

Note: - The purpose of the runway condition code is to permit an operational aircraft performance calculation by the flight crew. Procedure for the determination of the runway condition code is described in the PANS-Aerodromes Doc. 9881

Runway Condition Report; A comprehensive standardised runway condition report relating to runway surface conditions and its effect on the aircraft landing and take-off

Runway end safety area (RESA): An area symmetrical about the extended runway centre line and adjacent to the end of the strip primarily intended to reduce the risk of damage to an aeroplane undershooting or overrunning the runway.

Runway guard lights: A light system intended to caution pilots or vehicle drivers that they are about to enter an active runway.

Runway-holding position: A designated position intended to protect a runway, an obstacle limitation surface, or an ILS/MLS critical/sensitive area at which taxiing aircraft and vehicles shall stop and hold, unless otherwise authorized by the aerodrome control tower.

Note—In radiotelephony phraseologies, the expression "holding point" is used to designate the runway-holding position.

Runway strip: A defined area including the runway and stopway, if provided, intended:

a) to reduce the risk of damage to aircraft running off a runway; and

b) to protect aircraft flying over it during take-off or landing operations.

Runway turn pad: A defined area on a land aerodrome adjacent to a runway for the purpose of completing a 180-degree turn on a runway.

Runway visual range (RVR): The range over which the pilot of an aircraft on the centre line of a runway can see the runway surface markings or the lights delineating the runway or identifying its centre line.

Safety management system (SMS): A systematic approach to managing safety including the necessary organizational structure, accountabilities, policies and procedures.

Segregated parallel operations: Simultaneous operations on parallel or near-parallel instrument runways in which one runway is used exclusively for approaches and the other runway is used exclusively for departures.

Shoulder: An area adjacent to the edge of a pavement so prepared as to provide a transition between the pavement and the adjacent surface.

Sign.

a) **Fixed message sign**. A sign presenting only one message.

b) **Variable message sign**. A sign capable of presenting several predetermined messages or no message, as applicable. Signal area. An area on an aerodrome used for the display of ground signals.

Signal Area: An area on an aerodrome used for the display of ground signals.

Slush: Water-saturated snow which with a heel-and-toe slap-down motion against the ground will be displaced with a splatter; specific gravity: 0.5 up to 0.8.

Note. — Combinations of ice, snow and/or standing water may, especially when rain, rain and snow, or snow is falling, produce substances with specific gravities in excess of 0.8. These substances, due to their high water/ice content, will have a transparent rather than a cloudy appearance and, at the higher specific gravities, will be readily distinguishable from slush.

Snow (on the ground).

a) **Dry snow**: Snow which can be blown if loose or, if compacted by hand, will fall apart again upon release; specific gravity: up to but not including 0.35.

b) **Wet snow:** Snow which, if compacted by hand, will stick together and tend to or form a snowball; specific gravity: 0.35 up to but not including 0.5.

c) **Compacted snow:** Snow which has been compressed into a solid mass that resists further compression and will hold together or break up into lumps if picked up; specific gravity: 0.5 and over.

Station declination: An alignment variation between the zero degree radial of a VOR and truenorth, determined at the time the VOR station is calibrated.

Stopway: A defined rectangular area on the ground at the end of take-off run available prepared as a suitable area in which an aircraft can be stopped in the case of an abandoned take-off.

Switch-over time (light). The time required for the actual intensity of a light measured in a given direction to fall from 50 percent and recover to 50 per cent during a power supply changeover, when the light is being operated at intensities of 25 per cent or above.

Take-off runway: A runway intended for take-off only.

Taxiway: A defined path on a land aerodrome established for the taxiing of aircraft and intended to provide a link between one part of the aerodrome and another, including:

a) **Aircraft stand taxilane**: A portion of an apron designated as a taxiway and intended to provide access to aircraft stands only.

b) **Apron taxiway**: A portion of a taxiway system located on an apron and intended to provide a through taxi-route across the apron.

c) **Rapid exit taxiway**: A taxiway connected to a runway at an acute angle and designed to allow landing aeroplanes to turn off at higher speeds than are achieved on other exit taxiways thereby minimizing runway occupancy times.

Taxiway intersection: A junction of two or more taxiways.

Taxiway strip: An area including a taxiway intended to protect an aircraft operating on the taxiway and to reduce the risk of damage to an aircraft accidentally running off the taxiway.

Threshold: The beginning of that portion of the runway usable for landing.

Touchdown zone: The portion of a runway, beyond the threshold, where it is intended landing aeroplanes first contact the runway.

Usability factor: The percentage of time during which the use of a runway or system of runways is not restricted because of the crosswind component.

Note— Crosswind component means the surface wind component at right angles to the runway centre line.

1.2 Applicability

1.2.1 The interpretation of some of the specifications in the Standard expressly requires the exercising of discretion, the taking of a decision or the performance of a function by the appropriate authority. In other specifications, the expression appropriate authority does not actually appear although its inclusion is implied. In both cases, the responsibility for whatever determination or action is necessary shall rest with the State having jurisdiction over the aerodrome.

1.2.2 The specifications, unless otherwise indicated in a particular context, shall apply to all aerodromes open to public use in accordance with the requirements of Article 15 of the Convention. The specifications of BAS, Volume I, Chapter 3, shall apply only to land aerodromes. The specifications in this volume shall apply, where appropriate, to heliports but shall not apply to stolports.

Note. — Although there are at present no specifications relating to stolports, it is intended that specifications for these aerodromes will be included as they are developed. In the interim, guidance material on stolports is given in the Stolport Manual (Doc 9150).

1.2.3 Wherever a colour is referred to in this Annex, the specifications for that colour given in Appendix 1 shall apply.

1.3 Common reference systems

1.3.1 Horizontal reference system

World Geodetic System—1984 (WGS-84) shall be used as the horizontal (geodetic) reference system. Reported aeronautical geographical coordinates (indicating latitude and longitude) shall be expressed in terms of the WGS-84 geodetic reference datum.

Note—Comprehensive guidance material concerning WGS-84 is contained in the World Geodetic System — 1984 (WGS-84) Manual (Doc 9674).

1.3.2 Vertical reference system

Mean sea level (MSL) datum, which gives the relationship of gravity-related height (elevation) to a surface known as the geoid, shall be used as the vertical reference system.

Note 1—The geoid globally most closely approximates MSL. It is defined as the equipotential surface in the gravity field of the Earth which coincides with the undisturbed MSL extended continuously through the continents.

Note 2— Gravity-related heights (elevations) are also referred to as orthometric heights while distances of points above the ellipsoid are referred to as ellipsoidal heights.

1.3.3 Temporal reference system

1.3.3.1 The Gregorian calendar and Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) shall be used as the temporal reference system.

1.3.3.2 When a different temporal reference system is used, this shall be indicated in GEN 2.1.2 of the Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP); see —Aeronautical Information Services, Appendix 1.

1.4 Certification of aerodromes

The intent of these specifications is to ensure the establishment of a regulatory system so that compliance with the specifications in this Standard can be effectively enforced. The most effective and transparent means of ensuring compliance with applicable specifications is the availability of a separate safety oversight entity and a well-defined safety oversight mechanism with support of appropriate legislation to be able to carry out the function of safety regulation of aerodromes. When an aerodrome is granted a certificate, it signifies to aircraft operators and other organizations operating on the aerodrome that, at the time of certification, the aerodrome meets the specifications regarding the facility and its operation, and that it has, according to the certifying authority, the capability to maintain these specifications for the period of validity of the certificate. The certification process also establishes the baseline for continued monitoring of compliance with the specifications. Information on the status of certification of aerodromes would need to be provided to the appropriate aeronautical information services for promulgation in the Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP).

1.4.1 BCAA shall certify aerodromes used for international and domestic operations in accordance with the specifications contained in this Standard as well as other relevant specifications through an appropriate regulatory framework.

1.4.2 The regulatory framework shall include the establishment of Aerodrome Inspector’s Handbook for the certification of aerodromes.

1.4.3 As part of the certification process, Aerodrome Section shall ensure that an aerodrome manual which will include all pertinent information on the aerodrome site, facilities, services, equipment, operating procedures, organization and management including a safety management system, is submitted by the applicant for approval/acceptance prior to granting the aerodrome certificate.

1.5 Airport design

1.5.1 Architectural and infrastructure-related requirements for the optimum implementation of international civil aviation security measures shall be integrated into the design and construction of new facilities and alterations to existing facilities at an aerodrome.

Refer: all aspects of the planning of aerodromes including security considerations is contained in the Airport Planning Manual (Doc 9184), Part 1.

The design of aerodromes should take into account, where appropriate, land-use and environmental control measures. Refer - Doc 9184-Part 2.

1.6 Reference code

Introductory Note —The intent of the reference code is to provide a simple method for interrelating the numerous specifications concerning the characteristics of aerodromes so as to provide a series of aerodrome facilities that are suitable for the aeroplanes that are intended to operate at the aerodrome. The code is not intended to be used for determining runway length or pavement strength requirements. The code is composed of two elements which are related to the aeroplane performance characteristics and dimensions. Element 1 is a number based on the aeroplane reference field length and element 2 is a letter based on the aeroplane wingspan and outer main gear wheel span. A particular specification is related to the more appropriate of the two elements of the code or to an appropriate combination of the two code elements.

The code letter or number within an element selected for design purposes is related to the critical aeroplane characteristics for which the facility is provided. When applying Bhutan Aerodrome Standard, the aeroplanes which the aerodrome is intended to serve are first identified and then the two elements of the code.

1.6.1 An aerodrome reference code — code number and letter —which is selected for aerodrome planning purposes shall be determined in accordance with the characteristics of the aeroplane for which an aerodrome facility is intended.

1.6.2 The aerodrome reference code numbers and letters shall have the meanings assigned to them in Table 1-1.

1.6.3 The code number for element1shall be determined from Table 1-1 selecting the code number corresponding to the highest value of the aeroplane reference field lengths of the aeroplanes for which the runway is intended.

Note 1 - The determination of the aeroplane reference field length is solely for the selection of a code number and is not intended to influence the actual runway length provided.

Note 2 – Guidance on determining the runway length is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual, (Doc 9157), Part 1 – Runways.

1.6.4 The code letter for element 2 shall be determined from Table 1-1, column 3, by selecting the code letter which corresponds to the greatest wingspan of the aeroplanes for which the facility is intended.

Note. – Guidance on determining the aerodrome reference code is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1 and 2.

Table 1-1 Aerodrome reference code

(see 1.6.2 to 1.6.4)

Code element 1	
Code number	Aeroplane reference field length
1	Less than 800 m
2	800 m up to but not including 1200 m
3	1200 m up to but not including 1800 m
4	1800 m and over
Code element 2	
Code letter	Wingspan
A	Up to but not including 15 m
B	15 m up to but not including 24 m
C	24 m up to but not including 36 m
D	36 m up to but not including 52 m
E	52 m up to but not including 65 m
F	65 m up to but not including 80 m

Note. – Guidance on planning for aeroplanes with wingspans greater than 80 m is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Parts 1 and 2.

1.7 Specific procedures for aerodrome operations

Introductory Note—This section introduces PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981) for use by an aerodrome undertaking an assessment of its compatibility with the type of traffic or operation it is intending to accommodate. The material in the PANS Aerodromes addresses operational issues faced by existing aerodromes and provides the necessary procedures to ensure the continued safety of operations. Where alternative measures, operational procedures and operating restrictions have been developed, these are detailed in the aerodrome manual and reviewed periodically to assess their continued validity. The PANS-Aerodromes does not substitute nor circumvent the provisions contained in this Standard. It is expected that infrastructure on an existing aerodrome or a new aerodrome will fully comply with the requirements in this Standard.

1.7.1 When the aerodrome accommodates an aeroplane that exceeds the certificated characteristics of the aerodrome, the compatibility between the operation of the aeroplane and aerodrome infrastructure and operations shall be assessed and appropriate measures developed and implemented in order to maintain an acceptable level of safety during operations.

Refer- Procedures to assess the compatibility of the operation of a new aeroplane with an existing aerodrome - (PANS-Aerodromes Doc 9981).

1.7.2 Information concerning alternative measures, operational procedures and operating restrictions implemented at an aerodrome arising from 1.7.1 shall be promulgated.

CHAPTER 2 AERODROME DATA

2.1 Aeronautical data

2.1.1 Determination and reporting of aerodrome-related aeronautical data shall be in accordance with the accuracy and integrity classification required to meet the needs of the end-users of aeronautical data.

Not.- Specifications concerning the accuracy and integrity classification related to aerodrome-related aeronautical data are contained in PANS-AIM (Doc 10066), Appendix 1.

2.1.2 Aerodrome mapping data should be made available to the aeronautical information services for aerodromes deemed relevant by BCAA where safety and/or performance-based operations suggest possible benefits.

Note 1.- Aerodrome mapping databases related provisions are contained in Annex 15, Chapter 5 and PANS-AIM (Doc 10066), Chapter 5.

Note 2.- Guidance material concerning the application of aerodrome mapping databases is provided in Attachment A, Section 23.

2.1.3 Where made available in accordance with 2.1.2, the selection of the aerodrome mapping data features to be collected shall be made with consideration of the intended applications.

Note 1. – It is intended that the selection of the features to be collected match a defined operational need.
Note 2. – Aerodrome mapping databases can be provided at one of two levels of quality – fine or medium. These levels and the corresponding numerical requirements are defined in RTCA Document DO-272B and European Organization for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE) Document ED-99C – User Requirements for Aerodrome Mapping Information.

2.1.4 Digital data error detection techniques shall be used during the transmission and/or storage of aeronautical data and digital data sets.

Note. – Detailed specifications concerning digital data error detection techniques are contained in PANS-AIM (Doc 10066).

2.2 Aerodrome reference point

2.2.1 An aerodrome reference point shall be established for an aerodrome.

2.2.2 The aerodrome reference point shall be located near the initial or planned geometric centre of the aerodrome and shall normally remain where first established.

2.2.3 The position of the aerodrome reference point shall be measured and reported to the aeronautical information services authority in degrees, minutes and seconds.

2.3 Aerodrome and runway elevations

2.3.1 The aerodrome elevation and geoid undulation at the aerodrome elevation position shall be measured to the accuracy of one-half metre or foot and reported to the aeronautical information services authority.

2.3.1 For an aerodrome used by international civil aviation for non-precision approaches, the elevation and geoid undulation of each threshold, the elevation of the runway end and any high and low intermediate points along the runway shall be measured to the accuracy of one-half meter or foot and reported to the aeronautical information services authority.

2.3.2 For precision approach runway, the elevation and geoid undulation of the threshold, the elevation of the runway end and the highest elevation of the touchdown zone shall be measured to the accuracy of one-quarter metre or foot and reported to the aeronautical information services authority.

Note. — Geoid undulation must be measured in accordance with the appropriate system of coordinates.

2.4 Aerodrome reference temperature

2.4.1 An aerodrome reference temperature shall be determined for an aerodrome in degrees Celsius.

2.4.2 The aerodrome reference temperature should be the monthly mean of the daily maximum temperatures for the hottest month of the year (the hottest month being that which has the highest monthly mean temperature). This temperature should be averaged over a period of years.

2.5 Aerodrome dimensions and related information

2.5.1 The following data shall be measured or described, as appropriate, for each facility provided on an aerodrome:

a) runway —true bearing to one-hundredth of a degree, designation number, length, width, displaced threshold location to the nearest metre or foot, slope, surface type, type of runway and, for a precision approach runway category I, the existence of an obstacle free zone when provided;

b) strip
runway end safety area
stop way } length, width to the nearest metre or foot, surface type; and arresting system — location (which runway end) and description;

c) taxiway — designation, width, surface type;

d) apron — surface type, aircraft stands;

e) the boundaries of the air traffic control service;

f) clearway — length to the nearest metre or foot, ground profile;

g) visual aids for approach procedures, marking and lighting of runways, taxiways and aprons, other visual guidance and control aids on taxiways and aprons, including taxi-holding positions and stopbars, and location and type of visual docking guidance systems;

h) location and radio frequency of any VOR aerodrome checkpoint

i) location and designation of standard taxi-routes; and

j) distances to the nearest metre or foot of localizer and glide path elements comprising an instrument landing system (ILS) or azimuth and elevation antenna of a microwave landing system (MLS) in relation to the associated runway extremities.

2.5.2 The geographical coordinates of each threshold shall be measured and reported to the aeronautical information services authority in degrees, minutes, seconds and hundredths of seconds.

2.5.3 The geographical coordinates of appropriate taxiway centre line points shall be measured and reported to the aeronautical information services authority in degrees, minutes, seconds and hundredths of seconds.

2.5.4 The geographical coordinates of each aircraft stand shall be measured and reported to the aeronautical information services authority in degrees, minutes, seconds and hundredths of seconds.

2.5.5 The geographical coordinates of obstacles in Area 2 (the part within the aerodrome boundary) and in Area 3 shall be measured and reported to the aeronautical information services authority in degrees, minutes, seconds and tenths of seconds. In addition, the top elevation, type, marking and lighting (if any) of obstacles shall be reported to the aeronautical information services authority.

Note 1.- See Annex 15, Appendix 1, for graphical illustrations of the obstacle data collection surfaces and criteria used to identify obstacles in Areas 2 and 3.

Note 2.- PANS-AIM (Doc 10066), Appendix 1 and Appendix 8 provide requirements for obstacle data determination in Areas 2 and 3.

2.6 Strength of pavements

2.6.1 The bearing strength of a pavement shall be determined.

2.6.2 The bearing strength of a pavement intended for aircraft of apron (ramp) mass greater than 5 700 kg shall be made available using the aircraft classification number — pavement classification number (ACN-PCN) method by reporting all of the following information:

a) the pavement classification number (PCN);

b) pavement type for ACN-PCN determination;

c) subgrade strength category;

d) maximum allowable tire pressure category or maximum allowable tire pressure value; and

e) evaluation method.

Note. – If necessary, PCNs may be published to an accuracy of one-tenth of a whole number.

2.6.3 The pavement classification number (PCN) reported shall indicate that an aircraft with an aircraft classification number (ACN) equal to or less than the reported PCN can operate on the pavement subject to any limitation on the tire pressure, or aircraft all-up mass for specified aircraft type(s).

Note. – Different PCNs may be reported if the strength of the pavement is subject to significant seasonal variation.

2.6.4 The ACN of an aircraft shall be determined in accordance with the standard procedures associated with the ACN-PCN method.

Note.—The standard procedures for determining the ACN of an aircraft are given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3. For convenience several aircraft types currently in use have been evaluated on rigid and flexible pavements founded on the four subgrade categories in 2.6.6 b) below and the results tabulated in that manual.

2.6.5 For the purposes of determining the ACN, the behavior of a pavement shall be classified as equivalent to a rigid or flexible construction.

2.6.6 Information on pavement type for ACN-PCN determination, subgrade strength category, maximum allowable tire pressure category and evaluation method shall be reported using the following codes:

a) Pavement type for ACN-PCN determination:	**Code**
Rigid pavement	R
Flexible pavement	F

b) Subgrade strength category:	**Code**
High strength: characterized by K = 150 MN/m3 and representing all K values above 120 MN/m3 for rigid pavements, and by CBR=15 and representing all CBR values above 13 for flexible pavements.	**A**
Medium strength: characterized by K = 80 MN/m3 and representing a range in K of 60 to120 MN/m3 for rigid pavements, and by CBR=10 and representing a range in CBR of 8 to 13 for flexible pavements.	B
Low strength: characterized by K = 40 MN/m3 and representing a range in K of 25 to 60 MN/m3 for rigid pavements, and by CBR = 6 and representing a range in CBR of 4 to 8 for flexible pavements.	C
Ultra low strength: characterized by K=20 MN/m3 and representing all K values below 25 MN/m3 for rigid pavements, and by CBR=3 and representing all CBR values below 4 for flexible pavements.	D

c) Maximum allowable tire pressure category:	**Code**
Unlimited: no pressure limit	W
High: pressure limited to 1.75 MPa	X
Medium: pressure limited to 1.25 MPa	Y
Low: pressure limited to 0.50 MPa	Z

Note.— See Note 5 to 10.2.1 where the pavement is used by aircraft with tire pressures in the upper categories

d) Evaluation method:	**Code**
Technical evaluation: representing a specific study of the pavement characteristics and application of pavement behavior technology.	**T**
Using aircraft experience: representing a knowledge of the specific type and mass of aircraft satisfactorily being supported under regular use.	**U**

Note. - The following examples illustrate how pavement strength data are reported under the ACN-PCN method.

Example 1—If the bearing strength of a rigid pavement, resting on a medium strength subgrade, has been assessed by technical evaluation to be PCN 80 and there is no tire pressure limitation, then the reported information would be:

PCN 80 / R / B / W / T

Example 2—If the bearing strength of a composite pavement, behaving like a flexible pavement and resting on a high strength subgrade, has been assessed by using aircraft experience to be PCN 50 and the maximum tire pressure allowable is1.25 MPa, then the reported information would be:

PCN 50 / F / A / Y / U

Note— Composite construction.

Example 3—If the bearing strength of a flexible pavement, resting on a medium strength subgrade, has been assessed by technical evaluation to be PCN 40 and the maximum allowable tire pressure is 0.80 MPa, then the reported information would be:

PCN 40 / F / B / 0.80 MPa /T

Example 4—If a pavement is subject to a B747-400 all-up mass limitation of 390 000 kg, then the reported information would include the following note.

Note—The reported PCN is subject to a B747-400 all-up mass limitation of 390 000 kg.

2.6.7 Criteria should be established to regulate the use of a pavement by an aircraft with an

ACN higher than the PCN reported for that pavement in accordance with 2.6.2 and 2.6.3.

Note. – Attachment A, Section 20, details a simple method for regulating overload operations while the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3, includes the descriptions of more detailed procedures for evaluation of pavements and their suitability for restricted overload operations.

2.6.8 The bearing strength of a pavement intended for aircraft of apron (ramp) mass equal to or less than 5 700 kg shall be made available by reporting the following information

a) maximum allowable aircraft mass; and

b) maximum allowable tire pressure.

Example: 4 000 kg/0.50 MPa.

2.7 Pre-flight altimeter check location

2.7.1 One or more pre-flight altimeter check locations shall be established for an aerodrome.

2.7.2 A pre-flight check location should be located on an apron.

Note 1.- Locating a pre-flight altimeter check location on an apron enables an altimeter check to be made prior to obtaining taxi clearance and eliminates the need for stopping for that purpose after leaving the apron.

Note 2.- Normally an entire apron can serve as a satisfactory altimeter check location.

2.7.3 The elevation of a pre-flight altimeter check location shall be given as the average elevation, rounded to the nearest metre or foot, of the area on which it is located. The elevation of any portion of a pre-flight altimeter check location shall be within 3 m (10 ft) of the average elevation for that location.

2.8 Declared distances

The following distances shall be calculated to the nearest metre or foot for a runway intended for use by international commercial air transport:

a) take-off run available;

b) take-off distance available;

c) accelerate-stop distance available; and

d) landing distance available.

Note. - Guidance on calculation of declared distances is given in Attachment A, Section 3.

2.9 Condition of the movement area and related facilities

2.9.1 Information on the condition of the movement area and the operational status of related facilities shall be provided to the appropriate aeronautical information services units, and similar information of operational significance to the air traffic services units, to enable those units to provide the necessary information to arriving and departing aircraft. The information shall be kept up to date and changes in conditions reported without delay.

Note. – The nature, format and conditions of the information to be provided are specified in the PNAS-AIM (Doc 10066) and the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444).

2.9.2 The condition of the movement area and the operational status of related facilities shall be monitored, and reports on matters of operational significance affecting aircraft and aerodrome operations shall be provided in order to take appropriate action, particularly in respect of the following:

a) construction or maintenance work;

b) rough or broken surfaces on a runway, a taxiway or an apron;

c) snow, slush, ice, or frost on a runway, a taxiway or an apron;

d) water on a runway, a taxiway or an apron;

e) snow banks or drifts adjacent to a runway, a taxiway or an apron;

f) anti-icing or de-icing liquid chemicals or other contaminants on a runway, taxiway or apron;

g) other temporary hazards, including parked aircraft;

h) failure or irregular operation of part or all of the aerodrome visual aids; and

i) failure of the normal or secondary power supply.

Note 1.— Until 4 November 2020, Other contaminants may include mud, dust, sand, volcanic ash, oil and rubber. Annex 6, Part I — International Commercial Air Transport — Aeroplanes, Attachment C provides guidance on the description of runway surface conditions. Additional guidance is included in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2.

Note 2. — Until 4 November 2020, Particular attention would have to be given to the simultaneous presence of snow, slush, ice, wet ice, snow on ice with anti-icing or de-icing liquid chemicals.

Note 3. — Until 4 November 2020, See 2.9.11 for a list of winter contaminants to be reported.

Note 1.- As of 5 November 2020, Other contaminants may include mud, dust, sand, volcanic ash, oil and rubber. Procedures for monitoring and reporting the conditions of the movement area are included in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981).

Note 2. — As of 5 November 2020, the Aeroplane Performance Manual (Doc 10064) provides guidance on aircraft performance calculation requirements regarding the description of runway surface conditions in 2.9.2 c), e) and f).

Note 3. — As of 5 November 2020, origin and evolution of data, assessment process and the procedure are prescribed in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981). These procedures are intended to fulfill the requirements to achieve the desired level of safety for aeroplane operations prescribed by Annex 6 and Annex 8 and to provide the information fulfilling the syntax requirements for dissemination specified in Annex 15 and the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444).

2.9.3 Until 4 November 2020, To facilitate compliance with 2.9.1 and 2.9.2, inspections of the movement area shall be carried out each day at least once where the code number is 1 or 2 and at least twice where the code number is 3 or 4.

Note. - Guidance on carrying out daily inspections of the movement area is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 8 and in the Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS) (Doc 9476).

2.9.4 As of 5 November 202, to facilitate compliance with 2.9.1 and 2.9.2, the following inspections shall be carried out each day:

a) for the movement area, at least once where the aerodrome reference code number is 1 or 2 and at least twice where the aerodrome reference code number is 3 or 4; and

b) for the runway(s), inspections in addition to a) whenever the runway surface conditions may have changed significantly due to meteorological conditions.

Note 1.- Procedures on carrying out daily inspections of the movement area are given in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981). Further guidance is available in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 8, in the Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS) (Doc 9476) and in the Advanced Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (A-SMGCS) Manual (Doc 9830).

Note 2.- The PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981) containcs clarifications on the scope of a significant change in the runway surface conditions.

2.9.5 Until 4 November 2020, personnel assessing and reporting runway surface conditions required in 2.9.2 and 2.9.8 should be trained and competent to meet criteria set by the State.

Note. — Guidance on criteria is included in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 8, Chapter 7.

2.9.5 As of 5 November 2020, personal assessing and reporting runway surface conditions required in 2.9.2 and 2.9.5 shall be trained and competent to perform their duties.

Note 1.- Guidance on training of personnel is given in Attachment A, Section 6 [applicable 5 November 2020].

Note 2.- Information on training for personnel assessing and reporting runway surface conditions is available in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981).

Water on a runway [applicable until 4 November 2020]

2.9.6 Whenever water is present on a runway, a description of the runway surface conditions should be made available using the following terms:

DAMP — the surface shows a change of colour due to moisture.
WET — the surface is soaked but there is no standing water.
STANDING WATER — for aeroplane performance purposes, a runway where more than 25 per cent of the runway surface area (whether in isolated areas or not) within the required length and width being used is covered by water more than 3 mm deep.

2.9.7 Information that a runway or portion thereof may be slippery when wet shall be made available.

Note.— The determination that a runway or portion thereof may be slippery when wet is not based solely on the friction measurement obtained using a continuous friction measuring device. Supplementary tools to undertake this assessment are described in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2

2.9.8 Notification shall be given to aerodrome users when the friction level of a paved runway or portion thereof is less than that specified by the State in accordance with 10.2.3.

Note—Guidance on conducting a runway surface friction characteristics evaluation programme that includes determining and expressing the minimum friction level is provided in Attachment A, Section 7.

Snow, slush, ice or frost on a runway [applicable until 4 November 2020]

Note 1—The intent of these specifications is to satisfy the SNOWTAM and NOTAM promulgation requirements contained in Annex 15and the PANS-AIM (Doc 10066).

Note 2.- Runway surface condition sensors may be used to detect and continuously display current or predicted information on surface conditions such as the presence of moisture, or imminent formation of ice on pavements.

2.9.8 Whenever an operational runway is contaminated by snow, slush, ice or frost, the runway surface condition shall be assessed and reported.

Note. – Guidance on assessment of snow- and ice-covered paved surfaces is provided in Attachment A, Section 6.

2.9.9 Runway surface friction measurements made on a runway that is contaminated by slush, wet snow or wet ice should not be reported unless the reliability of the measurement relevant to its operational use can be assured.

Note. – Contaminant drag on the equipment's measuring wheel, amongst other factors, may cause readings obtained in these conditions to be unreliable.

2.9.10 When friction measurements are taken as part of the assessment, the performance of the friction measuring device on compacted snow- or ice-covered surfaces should meet the standard and correlation criteria set or agreed by the State.

Note. – Guidance on criteria for, and correlation between, friction measuring devices is included in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2.

2.9.11 Whenever snow, slush, ice or frost is present and reported, the description of the runway surface condition should use the following terms:

DRY SNOW;
WET SNOW;
COMPACTED SNOW;
WET COMPACTED SNOW;
SLUSH;
ICE;
WET ICE;
FROST;
DRY SNOW ON ICE;
WET SNOW ON ICE;
CHEMICALLY TREATED;
SANDED

and should include, where applicable, the assessment of contaminant depth.

2.9.12 Whenever dry snow, wet snow or slush is present on a runway, an assessment of the mean depth over each third of the runway should be made to an accuracy of approximately 2 cm for dry snow, 1 cm for wet snow and 0.3 cm for slush.

Runway surface condition(s) for use in the runway condition report [applicable 5 November 2020]

Introductory Note.— The philosophy of the runway condition report is that the aerodrome operator assesses the runway surface conditions whenever water, snow, slush, ice or frost are present on an operational runway. From this assessment, a runway condition code (RWYCC) and a description of the runway surface are reported which can be used by the flight crew for aeroplane performance calculations. This report, based on the type, depth and coverage of contaminants, is the best assessment of the runway surface condition by the aerodrome operator; however, all other pertinent information may be taken into consideration. See Attachment A, Section 6, for further details. The PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981) contains procedures on the use of the runway condition report and assignment of the RWYCC in accordance with the runway condition assessment matrix (RCAM).

2.9.13 The runway surface condition shall be assessed and reported through a runway condition code (RWYCC) and a description using the following terms:

COMPACTED SNOW
DRY
DRY SNOW
DRY SNOW ON TOP OF COMPACTED SNOW
DRY SNOW ON TOP OF ICE
FROST
ICE
SLUSH

STANDING WATER
WATER ON TOP OF COMPACTED SNOW
WET
WET ICE
WET SNOW
WET SNOW ON TOP OF COMPACTED SNOW
WET SNOW ON TOP OF ICE
CHEMICALLY TREATED
LOOSE SAND

Note 1.— The runway surface conditions are those conditions for which, by means of the methods described in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981), the flight crew can derive appropriate aeroplane performance.

Note 2.— The conditions, either singly or in combination with other observations, are criteria for which the effect on aeroplane performance is sufficiently deterministic to allow assignment of a specific runway condition code.

Note 3.— The terms CHEMICALLY TREATED and LOOSE SAND do not appear in the aeroplane performance section but are used in the situational awareness section of the runway condition report.

2.9.14 Whenever an operational runway is contaminated, an assessment of the contaminant depth and and coverage over each third of the runway shall be made and reported.

Note.— Procedures on depth and coverage reporting are found in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981).

2.9.15 When friction measurements are used as part of the overall runway surface assessment on compacted snow- or ice-covered surfaces, the friction measuring device shall meet the standard set or agreed by the State.

2.9.16 Friction measurements made on runway surface conditions with contaminants other than compacted snow and ice should not be reported.

Note.— Friction measurements on loose contaminants such as snow and slush, in particular, are unreliable due to drag effects on the measurement wheel.

2.9.17 Information that a runway or portion thereof is slippery wet shall be made available.

Note 1.— The surface friction characteristics of a runway or a portion thereof can be degraded due to rubber deposits, surface polishing, poor drainage or other factors. The determination that a runway or portion thereof is slippery wet stems from various methods used solely or in combination. These methods may be functional friction measurements, using a continuous friction measuring device, that fall below a minimum standard as defined by the State, observations by aerodrome maintenance personnel, repeated reports by pilots and aircraft operators based on flight crew experience, or through analysis of aeroplane stopping performance that indicates a substandard surface. Supplementary tools to undertake this assessment are described in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981).

Note 2.— See 2.9.1 and 2.13 concerning the provision of information to, and coordination between, appropriate authorities.

2.9.18 Notification shall be given to relevant aerodrome users when the friction level of a paved runway or portion thereof is less than the minimum friction level specified by the State in accordance with 10.2.3.

Note 1.— Guidance on determining and expressing the minimum friction level is provided in Assessment, Measurement and Reporting of Runway Surface Conditions (Cir 329).

Note 2.— Procedures on conducting a runway surface friction characteristics evaluation programme are provided in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981).

Note 3.— Information to be promulgated in a NOTAM includes specifying which portion of the runway is below the minimum friction level and its location on the runway.

2.10 Disabled aircraft removal

Note.- See 9.3 for information on disabled aircraft removal services.

2.10.1 The telephone/telex number(s) of the office of the aerodrome coordinator of operations for the removal of an aircraft disabled on or adjacent to the movement area should be made available, on request to aircraft operators.

2.10.2 Information concerning the capability to remove an aircraft disabled on or adjacent to the movement area should be made available.

Note. – The capability to remove a disabled aircraft may be expressed in terms of the largest type of aircraft which the aerodrome is equipped to remove.

2.11 Rescue and firefighting

Note. – See 9.2 for information on rescue and firefighting services.

2.11.1 Information concerning the level of protection provided at an aerodrome for aircraft rescue and firefighting purposes shall be made available.

2.11.2 The level of protection normally available at an aerodrome should be expressed in terms of the category of the rescue and firefighting services as described in 9.2 and in accordance with the types and amounts of extinguishing agents normally available at the aerodrome.

2.11.3 Changes in the level of protection normally available at an aerodrome for rescue and firefighting shall be notified to the appropriate air traffic services units and aeronautical information services units to enable those units to provide the necessary information to arriving and departing aircraft. When such a change has been corrected, the above units shall be advised accordingly.

Note.- Changes in the level of protection from that normally available at the aerodrome could result from a change in the availability of extinguishing agents, equipment to deliver the agents or personnel to operate the equipment, etc.

2.11.4 A change should be expressed in terms of the new category of the rescue and firefighting service available at the aerodrome.

2.12 Visual approach slope indicator systems

The following information concerning a visual approach slope indicator system installation shall be made available:

a) associated runway designation number;

b) type of system according to 5.3.5.2. For an AT-VASIS, PAPI or APAPI installation, the side of the runway on which the lights are installed, i.e. left or right, shall be given;

c) where the axis of the system is not parallel to the runway centre line, the angle of displacement and the direction of displacement, i.e. left or right, shall be indicated;

d) nominal approach slope angle(s). For a T-VASIS or an AT-VASIS this shall be angle **ϴ** according to the formula in Figure 5-18 and for a PAPI and an APAPI this shall be angle (B + C) ÷ 2 and (A + B) ÷ 2, respectively as in Figure 5-20; and

e) minimum eye height(s) over the threshold of the on-slope signal(s). For a T-VASIS or an AT- VASIS this shall be the lowest height at which only the wing bar(s) are visible; however, the additional heights at which the wing bar(s) plus one, two or three fly-down light units come into view may also be reported if such information would be of benefit to aircraft using the approach. For a PAPI this shall be the setting angle of the third unit from the runway minus 2', i.e. angle B minus 2', and for an APAPI this shall be the setting angle of the unit farther from the runway minus 2', i.e. angle A minus 2'.

2.13 Coordination between aeronautical information services and aerodrome authorities

To ensure that aeronautical information services units obtain information to enable them to provide up-to-date pre-flight information and to meet the need for in-flight information, arrangements shall be made between aeronautical information services and aerodrome authorities responsible for aerodrome services to report to the responsible aeronautical information services unit, with a minimum of delay:

a) information on the status of certification of aerodromes and aerodrome conditions (ref. 1.4, 2.9, 2.10, 2.11 and 2.12);

b) the operational status of associated facilities, services and navigation aids within their area of responsibility;

c) any other information considered to be of operational significance.

2.13.2 Before introducing changes to the air navigation system, due account shall be taken by theservices responsible for such changes of the time needed by aeronautical information services for the preparation, production and issue of relevant material for promulgation. To ensure timely provision of the information to aeronautical information services, close coordination between those services concerned is therefore required.

2.13.3 Of a particular importance are changes to aeronautical information that affect charts and/or computer-based navigation systems which qualify to be notified by the aeronautical information regulation and control (AIRAC) system, as specified in Annex 15, Chapter 6 and

Appendix 4. The predetermined, internationally agreed AIRAC effective dates in addition to 14 days postage time shall be observed by the responsible aerodrome services when submitting the raw information/data to aeronautical information services.

Note.- Detailed specifications concerning the AIRAC system are contained in PANS-AIM (Doc 10066), Chapter 6.

2.13.4 The aerodrome services responsible for the provision of raw aeronautical information/data to the aeronautical information services shall do that while taking into account accuracy and integrity requirements necessary to meet the needs of the end-user of aeronautical data.

Note 1. – Specifications concerning the accuracy and integrity classification of aerodrome-related aeronautical data are contained in PANS-AIM (Doc 10066), Appendix 1.

Note 2. – Specifications for the issue of NOTAM and SNOWTAM are contained in Annex 15, Chapter 6 and PANS-AIM (Doc 10066), Appendices 3 and 4, respectively.

Note 3.- AIRAC information is distributed by the AIS at least 42 days in advance of the AIRAC effective dates with the objective of reaching recipients at least 28 days in advance of the effective date.

Note 4.- The schedule of the predetermined internationally agreed AIRAC common effective dates at intervals of 28 days and guidance for the AIRAC use are contained in the Aeronautical Information Services Manual (Doc 8126, Chapter 2).

CHAPTER 3. PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

3.1 Runways

Number and orientation of runways

Many factors affect the determination of the orientation, siting and number of runways.

One important factor is the usability factor, as determined by the wind distribution, which is specified hereunder. Another important factor is the alignment of the runway to facilitate the provision of approaches conforming to the approach surface specifications of Chapter 4. In Attachment A, Section 1, information is given concerning these and other factors.

3.1.1 The number and orientation of runways at an aerodrome should be such that the usability factor of the aerodrome is not less than 95 per cent for the aeroplanes that the aerodrome is intended to serve.

3.1.2 The siting and orientation of runways at an aerodrome should, where possible, be such that the arrival and departure tracks minimize interference with areas approved for residential use and other noise-sensitive areas close to the aerodrome in order to avoid future noise problems.

Note—Guidance on how to address noise problems is provided in the Airport Planning Manual (Doc 9184), Part 2, and in Guidance on the Balanced Approach to Aircraft Noise Management (Doc 9829).

3.1.3 Choice of maximum permissible crosswind components

In the application of 3.1.1 it should be assumed that landing or take-off of aeroplanes is, in normal circumstances, precluded when the crosswind component exceeds:

— 37 km/h (20 kt) in the case of aeroplanes whose reference field length is 1 500 m or over, except that when poor runway braking action owing to an insufficient longitudinal coefficient of friction is experienced with some frequency, a crosswind component not exceeding 24 km/h (13 kt) should be assumed;

— 24 km/h (13 kt) in the case of aeroplanes whose reference field length is 1 200 m or up to but not including 1500m; and

— 19 km/h (10 kt) in the case of aeroplanes whose reference field length is less than 1 200 m.

In Attachment A, Section 1, guidance is given on factors affecting the calculation of the estimate of the usability factor and allowances which may have to be made to take account of the effect of unusual circumstances

3.1.1 Data to be used

The selection of data to be used for the calculation of the usability factor should be based on reliable wind distribution statistics that extend over as long a period as possible, preferably of not less than five years. The observations used should be made at least eight times daily and spaced at equal intervals of time.

Note.—These winds are mean winds. Reference to the need for some allowance for gusty conditions is made in Attachment A, Section 1.

Location of threshold

3.1.2 A threshold should normally be located at the extremity of a runway unless operational considerations justify the choice of another location. Guidance on the sitting of the threshold is given in Attachment A, Section 11.

3.1.3 When it is necessary to displace a threshold, either permanently or temporarily, from its normal location, account should be taken of the various factors which may have a bearing on the location of the threshold. Where this displacement is due to an unserviceable runway condition, a cleared and graded area of at least 60 m in length should be available between the unserviceable area and the displaced threshold. Additional distance should also be provided to meet the requirements of the runway end safety area as appropriate. Guidance on factors which may be considered in the determination of the location of a displaced threshold is given in Attachment A, Section 11.

Actual length of runways

3.1.4 Primary runway

Except as provided in 3.1.9, the actual runway length to be provided for a primary runway should be adequate to meet the operational requirements of the aeroplanes for which the runway is intended and should be not less than the longest length determined by applying the corrections for local conditions to the operations and performance characteristics of the relevant aeroplanes.

1. This specification does not necessarily mean providing for operations by the critical aeroplane at its maximum mass.

2. Both take-off and landing requirements need to be considered when determining the length of runway to be provided and the need for operations to be conducted in both directions of the runway.

3. Local conditions that may need to be considered include elevation, temperature, runway slope, humidity and the runway surface characteristics.

4. When performance data on aeroplanes for which the runway is intended are not known, guidance on the determination of the actual length of a primary runway by application of general correction factors is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1

3.1.8 Secondary runway

The length of a secondary runway should be determined similarly to primary runways except that it needs only to be adequate for those aeroplanes which require to use that secondary runway in addition to the other runway or runways in order to obtain a usability factor of at least 95 per cent.

3.1.9 Runways with stopways or clearways

Where a runway is associated with a stopway or clearway, an actual runway length less than that resulting from application of 3.1.7 or 3.1.8, as appropriate, may be considered satisfactory, but in such a case any combination of runway, stopway and clearway provided should permit compliance with the operational requirements for take-off and landing of the aeroplanes the runway is intended to serve.

Refer: Attachment A, Section 2.

Width of runways

3.1.10 The width of a runway should be not less than the appropriate dimension specified in the following tabulation:

Code	Code Letter					
number	A	B	C	D	E	F
1[a]	18 m	18 m	23 m	-	-	-
2[b]	23 m	23 m	30 m	-	-	-
3	30 m	30 m	30 m	45 m	-	-
4	-	-	45 m	45 m	45 m	60 m

a. The width of a precision approach runway should be not less than 30m where the code number is 1 or 2.

1. The combinations of code numbers and letters for which widths are specified have been developed for typical aeroplane characteristics.

2. Factors affecting runway width are given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1.

Note—Procedures for wake turbulence categorization of aircraft and wake turbulence separation minima are contained in the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444), Chapter 4, 4.9 and Chapter 5, 5.8, respectively.

3.1.11 Where parallel non-instrument runways are intended for simultaneous use, the minimum distance between their centre lines should be:
— 210 m where the higher code number is 3 or 4;
— 150 m where the higher code number is 2; and
— 120 m where the higher code number is 1.

Note.— Procedures for wake turbulence categorization of aircraft and wake turbulence separation minima are contained in the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444), Chapter 4, 4.9 and Chapter 5, 5.8, respectively.

3.1.12 Where parallel instrument runways are intended for simultaneous use subject to conditions specified in the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444) and the PANS-OPS (Doc 8168), Volume I, the minimum distance between their centre lines should be:

— 1 035 m for independent parallel approaches;
— 915 m for dependent parallel approaches;
— 760 m for independent parallel departures;
— 760 m for segregated parallel operations;

except that:

a) for segregated parallel operations the specified minimum distance:

1) may be decreased by 30 m for each 150 m that the arrival runway is staggered toward the arriving aircraft, to a minimum of 300 m; and

2) should be increased by 30 m for each 150 m that the arrival runway is staggered away from the arriving aircraft;

b) for independent parallel approaches, combinations of minimum distances and associated conditions other than
those specified in the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444) may be applied when it is determined that such combinations would those specified in the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444) may be applied when it is determined that such combinations would not adversely affect the safety of aircraft operations.

Note.— Procedures and facilities requirements for simultaneous operations on parallel or near-parallel instrument runways are contained in the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444), Chapter 6 and the PANS-OPS (Doc 8168), Volume I, Part III, Section 2, and Volume II, Part I, Section 3; Part II, Section 1; and Part III, Section 3, and relevant guidance is contained in the Manual on Simultaneous Operations on Parallel or Near-Parallel Instrument Runways (SOIR) (Doc 9643).

Slopes on runways

3.1.13 Longitudinal slopes

The slope computed by dividing the difference between the maximum and minimum elevation along the runway centre line by the runway length should not exceed:

— 1 per cent where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 2 per cent where the code number is 1 or 2.

3.1.14 Along no portion of a runway should the longitudinal slope exceed:

— 1.25 per cent where the code number is 4, except that for the first and last quarter of the length of the runway the longitudinal slope should not exceed 0.8 per cent;

— 1.5 per cent where the code number is 3, except that for the first and last quarter of the length of a precision approach runway category II or III the longitudinal slope should not

— exceed 0.8 per cent; and

— 2 per cent where the code number is 1 or 2.

3.1.15 Longitudinal slope changes

Where slope changes cannot be avoided, a slope change between two consecutive slopes should not exceed:

— 1.5 per cent where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 2 per cent where the code number is 1 or 2.

Refer: Attachment A, Section 4.

3.1.16 The transition from one slope to another should be accomplished by a curved surface with a rate of change not exceeding:

— 0.1 per cent per 30 m (minimum radius of curvature of 30 000 m) where the code number is 4;
— 0.2 per cent per 30 m (minimum radius of curvature of 15 000 m) where the code number is 3; and
— 0.4 per cent per 30 m (minimum radius of curvature of 7 500 m) where the code number is 1 or 2.

3.1.17 Sight distance

Where slope changes cannot be avoided, they should be such that there will be an unobstructed line of sight from:

— any point 3 m above a runway to all other points 3 m above the runway within a distance of at least half the length of the runway where the code letter is C, D, E or F;

— any point 2 m above a runway to all other points 2 m above the runway within a distance of at least half the length of the runway where the code letter is B; and

— any point 1.5 m above a runway to all other points 1.5 m above the runway within a distance of at least half the length of the runway where the code letter is A.

Note— Consideration will have to be given to providing an unobstructed line of sight over the entire length of a single runway where a full-length parallel taxiway is not available. Where an aerodrome has intersecting runways, additional criteria on the line of sight of the intersection area would need to be considered for operational safety. See the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1.

3.1.18 Distance between slope changes

Undulations or appreciable changes in slopes located close together along a runway should be avoided. The distance between the points of intersection of two successive curves should not be less than:

a) the sum of the absolute numerical values of the corresponding slope changes multiplied by the appropriate value as follows:

— 30 000 m where the code number is 4;

— 15 000 m where the code number is 3; and

— 5 000 m where the code number is 1 or 2; or

b) 45 m; whichever is greater.

Guidance on implementing this specification is given in Attachment A, Section 4.

3.1.19 Transverse slopes

To promote the most rapid drainage of water, the runway surface should, if practicable, be cambered except where a single crossfall from high to low in the direction of the wind most frequently associated with rain would ensure rapid drainage. The transverse slope should ideally be:— 1.5 per cent where the code letter is C, D, E or F; and — 2 per cent where the code letter is A or B; but in any event should not exceed 1.5 per cent or 2 per cent, as applicable, nor be less than 1 per cent except at runway or taxiway intersections where flatter slopes may be necessary.

For a cambered surface the transverse slope on each side of the centre line should be symmetrical.

Note—On wet runways with crosswind conditions the problem of aquaplaning from poor drainage is apt to be accentuated. In Attachment A, Section 7, information is given concerning this problem and other relevant factors.

3.1.20 The transverse slope should be substantially the same throughout the length of a runway except at an intersection with another runway or a taxiway where an even transition should be provided taking account of the need for adequate drainage.

Note.— Guidance on transverse slope is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3.

Strength of runways

3.1.21 A runway should be capable of withstanding the traffic of aeroplanes the runway is intended to serve.

Surface of runways

3.1.22 The surface of a runway shall be constructed without irregularities that would impair the runway surface friction characteristics or otherwise adversely affect the take-off or landing of an aeroplane.

Note 1 - Surface irregularities may adversely affect the take-off or landing of an aeroplane by causing excessive bouncing, pitching, vibration, or other difficulties in the control of an aeroplane.

Note 2—Guidance on design tolerances and other information is given in Attachment A, Section 5. Additional guidance is included in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3.

3.1.23 A paved runway shall be so constructed or resurfaced as to provide surface friction characteristics at or above the minimum friction level set by the State.

3.1.24 The surface of a paved runway should be evaluated when constructed or resurfaced to determine that the surface friction characteristics achieve the design objectives.

Note—Guidance on surface friction characteristics of a new or resurfaced runway is given in Attachment A, Section 7. Additional guidance is included in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2.

3.1.25 Measurements of the surface friction characteristics of a new or resurfaced paved runway should be made with a continuous friction measuring device using self-wetting features.

Note—Guidance on surface friction characteristics of new runway surfaces is given in Attachment A, Section 7. Additional guidance is included in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2.

3.1.26 The average surface texture depth of a new surface should be not less than 1.0 mm.

Note 1- Macrotexture and microtexture are taken into consideration in order to provide the required surface friction characteristics. Guidance on surface design is given in Attachment A, Section 8.

Note 2— Guidance on methods used to measure surface texture is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2.

Note 3.— Guidance on design and methods for improving surface texture is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3.

3.1.27 When the surface is grooved or scored, the grooves or scorings should be either perpendicular to the runway centre line or parallel to non-perpendicular transverse joints, where applicable.

Note—Guidance on methods for improving the runway surface texture is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3.

3.2 Runway shoulders

General

Note— Guidance on characteristics and treatment of runway shoulders is given in Attachment A, Section 9, and in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1.

3.2.1 —Runway shoulders should be provided for a runway where the code letter is D or E, and the runway width is less than 60 m.

3.2.2 —Runway shoulders should be provided for a runway where the code letter is F.

Width of runway shoulders

3.2.3 —The runway shoulders should extend symmetrically on each side of the runway so that the overall width of the runway and its shoulders is not less than:

— 60 m where the code letter is D or E; and

— 75 m where the code letter is F.

Slopes on runway shoulders

3.2.4 —The surface of the shoulder that abuts the runway should be flush with the surface of the runway and its transverse slope should not exceed 2.5 per cent.

Strength of runway shoulders

3.2.5 —A runway shoulder should be prepared or constructed so as to be capable, in the event of an aeroplane running off the runway, of supporting the aeroplane without inducing structural damage to the aeroplane and of supporting ground vehicles which may operate on the shoulder.

Note— Guidance on strength of runway shoulders is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1.

3.3 Runway turn pads

General

3.3.1 Where the end of a runway is not served by a taxiway or a taxiway turnaround and where the code letter is D, E or F, a runway turn pad shall be provided to facilitate a 180-degree turn of aeroplanes. (See Figure 3-1.)

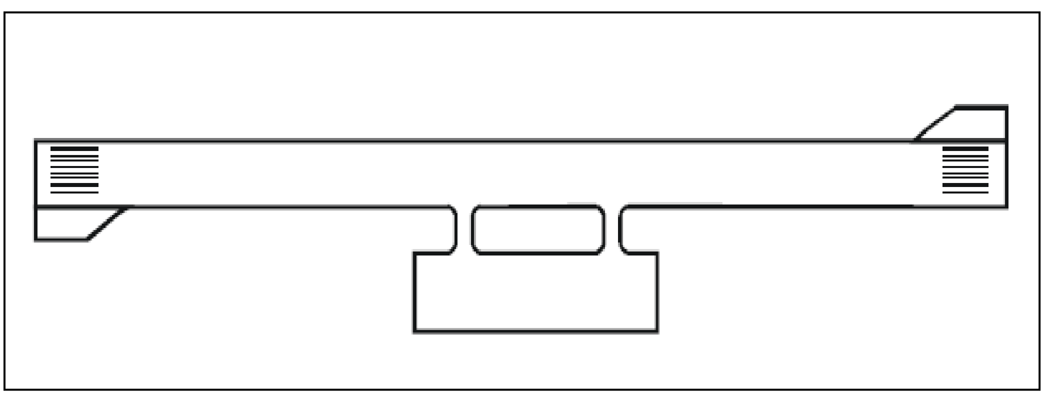


Figure 3-1. Typical turn pad layout

Where the end of a runway is not served by a taxiway or a taxiway turnaround and where the code letter is A, B or C, a runway turn pad should be provided to facilitate a 180-degree turn of aeroplanes.

Note 1—Such areas may also be useful if provided along a runway to reduce taxiing time and distance for aeroplanes which may not require the full length of the runway.

Note 2—Guidance on the design of the runway turn pads is available in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc9157), Part 1.

Guidance on taxiway turnaround as an alternate facility is available in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

3.3.2 The runway turn pad may be located on either the left or right side of the runway and adjoining the runway pavement at both ends of the runway and at some intermediate locations where deemed necessary.

Note—The initiation of the turn would be facilitated by locating the turn pad on the left side of the runway, since the left seat is the normal position of the pilot-in-command.

3.3.3 The intersection angle of the runway turn pad with the runway should not exceed 30 de- grees.

3.3.4 The nose wheel steering angle to be used in the design of the runway turn pad should not exceed 45 degrees.

The design of a runway turn pad shall be such that, when the cockpit of the aeroplane for which the turn pad is intended remains over the turn pad marking, the clearance distance between any wheel of the aeroplane landing gear and the edge of the turn pad shall be not less than that given by the following tabulation:

Code Letter	Clearance
A	1.5 m
B	2.25 m
C	3 m if the turn pad is intended to be used by aeroplanes with a wheel base less than 18 m; 4.5 m if the turn pad is intended to be used by aeroplanes with a wheel base equal to or greater than 18 m.
D	4.5 m
E	4.5 m
F	4.5 m

Note.—Wheel base means the distance from the nose gear to the geometric centre of the main gear.

3.3.7 Where severe weather conditions and resultant lowering of surface friction characteristics prevail, a larger wheel-to-edge clearance of 6 m should be provided where the code letter is E or F.

Slopes on runway turn pads

3.3.8 The longitudinal and transverse slopes on a runway turn pad should be sufficient to prevent the accumulation of water on the surface and facilitate rapid drainage of surface water. The slopes should be the same as those on the adjacent runway pavement surface.

Strength of runway turn pads

3.3.9 The strength of a runway turn pad should be at least equal to that of the adjoining runway which it serves, due consideration being given to the fact that the turn pad will be subjected to slow-moving traffic making hard turns and consequent higher stresses on the pavement.

Note.—Where a runway turn pad is provided with flexible pavement, the surface would need to be capable of withstanding the horizontal shear forces exerted by the main landing gear tires during turning maneuvers.

Surface of runway turn pads

3.3.10 The surface of a runway turn pad shall not have surface irregularities that may cause damage to an aeroplane using the turn pad.

3.3.11 The surface of a runway turn pad should be so constructed or resurfaced as to provide surface friction characteristics at least equal to that of the adjoining runway.

Shoulders for runway turn pads

3.3.12 The runway turn pads should be provided with shoulders of such width as is necessary to prevent surface erosion by the jet blast of the most demanding aeroplane for which the turn pad is intended, and any possible foreign object damage to the aeroplane engines.

Note—As a minimum, the width of the shoulders would need to cover the outer engine of the most demanding aeroplane and thus may be wider than the associated runway shoulders.

3.3.13 The strength of runway turn pad shoulders should be capable of withstanding the occasional passage of the aeroplane it is designed to serve without inducing structural damage to the aeroplane and to the supporting ground vehicles that may operate on the shoulder.

3.4 Runway strips

General

3.4.1 A runway and any associated stopways shall be included in a strip.

Length of runway strips

3.4.2 A strip shall extend before the threshold and beyond the end of the runway or stopway for a distance of at least: — 60 m where the code number is 2, 3 or 4;

— 60 m where the code number is 1 and the runway is an instrument one; and

— 30 m where the code number is 1 and the runway is a non-instrument one.

Width of runway strips

3.4.3 A strip including a precision approach runway shall, wherever practicable, extend laterally to a distance of at least:

— 150 m where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 75 m where the code number is 1 or 2; on each side of the centre line of the runway and its extended centre line throughout the length of the strip.

3.4.4 A strip including a non-precision approach runway should extend laterally to a distance of at least:

— 150 m where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 75 m where the code number is 1 or 2; on each side of the centre line of the runway and its extended centre line throughout the length of the strip.

3.4.5 A strip including a non-instrument runway should extend on each side of the centre line of the runway and its extended centre line throughout the length of the strip, to a distance of at least:

— 75 m where the code number is 3 or 4;

— 40 m where the code number is 2; and

— 30 m where the code number is 1.

Objects on runway strips

Note— refer BAS 9.9 for information regarding siting of equipment and installations on runway strips.

3.4.6 An object situated on a runway strip which may endanger aeroplanes should be regarded as an obstacle and should, as far as practicable, be removed.

Note 1— Consideration will have to be given to the location and design of drains on a runway strip to prevent damage to an aeroplane accidentally running off a runway. Suitably designed drain covers may be required. For further guidance, see the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1.

Note 2—Where open-air or covered storm water conveyances are installed, consideration will have to be given to ensure that their structure does not extend above the surrounding ground so as not to be considered an obstacle. See also Note 1 to 3.4.16.

Note 3— Particular attention needs to be given to the design and maintenance of an open-air storm water conveyance in order to prevent wildlife attraction, notably birds. If needed, it can be covered by a net. Guidance on wildlife control and reduction can be found in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 3.

3.4.7 No fixed object, other than visual aids required for air navigation or those required for aircraft safety purposes and which must be sited on the runway strip, and satisfying the relevant frangibility requirement in Chapter 5, shall be permitted on a runway strip:

a) on that portion of a runway strip within:

1) 75 m of the runway centre line where the code number is 3 or 4; or

2) 45 m of the runway centre line where the code number is 1 or 2; or

b) on a runway end safety area, a taxiway strip or within the distances specified in Table 3-1; or

c) on a clearway and which would endanger an aircraft in the air; shall be frangible and mounted as low as possible.

No mobile object shall be permitted on this part of the runway strip during the use of the runway for landing or take-off.

Grading of runway strips

3.4.8 That portion of a strip of an instrument runway within a distance of at least:
— 75 m where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 40 m where the code number is 1 or 2;
from the centre line of the runway and its extended centre line should provide a graded area for aeroplanes which the runway is intended to serve in the event of an aeroplane running off the runway.

Note— Guidance on grading of a greater area of a strip including a precision approach runway where the code number is 3 or 4 is given in Attachment A, Section 9.

3.4.9 That portion of a strip of a non-instrument runway within a distance of at least:

— 75 m where the code number is 3 or 4;

— 40 m where the code number is 2; and

— 30 m where the code number is 1;

from the centre line of the runway and its extended centre line should provide a graded area for aeroplanes which the runway is intended to serve in the event of an aeroplane running off the runway.

3.4.10 The surface of that portion of a strip that abuts a runway, shoulder or stopway shall be flush with the surface of the runway, shoulder or stopway.

3.4.11 That portion of a strip to at least 30 m before the start of a runway should be prepared against blast erosion in order to protect a landing aeroplane from the danger of an exposed edge.

Note 1—The area provided to reduce the erosive effects of jet blast and propeller wash may be referred to as a blast pad.

Note 2—Guidance on protection against aeroplane engine blast is available in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

3.4.12 Where the areas in 3.4.11 have paved surfaces, they should be able to withstand the occasional passage of the critical aeroplane for runway pavement design.

Slopes on runway strips

3.4.13 Longitudinal slopes

— A longitudinal slope along that portion of a strip to be graded should not exceed:
— 1.5 per cent where the code number is 4;

— 1.75 per cent where the code number is 3; and

— 2 per cent where the code number is 1 or 2.

3.4.14 Longitudinal slope changes

- Slope changes on that portion of a strip to be graded should be as gradual as practicable and abrupt changes or sudden reversals of slopes avoided.

3.4.16 Transverse slopes

— Transverse slopes on that portion of a strip to be graded should be adequate to prevent the accumulation of water on the surface but should not exceed:

— 2.5 per cent where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 3 per cent where the code number is 1 or 2;

except that to facilitate drainage the slope for the first 3 m outward from the runway, shoulder or stopway edge should be negative as measured in the direction away from the runway and may be as great as 5 per cent.

3.4 —The transverse slopes of any portion of a strip beyond that to be graded should not exceed an upward slope of 5 per cent as measured in the direction away from the runway.

Note 1—Where deemed necessary for proper drainage, an open-air storm water conveyance may be allowed in the non-graded portion of a runway strip and would be placed as far as practicable from the runway.

Note 2—The aerodrome rescue and firefighting (RFF) procedure would need to take into account the location of open air water conveyances within the non-graded portion of a runway strip.

Strength of runway strips

3.4.17 That portion of a strip of an instrument runway within a distance of at least:

— 75 m where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 40 m where the code number is 1 or 2;

from the centre line of the runway and its extended centre line should be so prepared or constructed as to minimize hazards arising from differences in load-bearing capacity to aeroplanes which the runway is intended to serve in the event of an aeroplane running off the runway.

Note.— Guidance on preparation of runway strips is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1.

3.4.18 That portion of a strip containing a non-instrument runway within a distance of at least:

— 75 m where the code number is 3 or 4;

— 40 m where the code number is 2; and

— 30 m where the code number is 1;

from the centre line of the runway and its extended centre line should be so prepared or constructed as to minimize hazards arising from differences in load-bearing capacity to aeroplanes which the runway is intended to serve in the event of an aeroplane running off the runway.

3.5 Runway end safety areas

General

3.5.1 A runway end safety area shall be provided at each end of a runway strip where:

— the code number is 3 or 4; and

— the code number is 1 or 2 and the runway is an instrument one.

Note.— Guidance on runway end safety areas is given in Attachment A, Section 10.

3.5.2 A runway end safety area should be provided at each end of a runway strip where the code number is 1 or 2 and the runway is a non-instrument one.

Dimensions of runway end safety areas

3.5.3 A runway end safety area shall extend from the end of a runway strip to a distance of at least 90 m where:

— the code number is 3 or 4; and

— the code number is 1 or 2 and the runway is an instrument one.

If an arresting system is installed, the above length may be reduced, based on the design specification of the system, subject to acceptance by the State.

Note.— Guidance on arresting systems is given in Attachment A, Section 10.

3.5.4 A runway end safety area should, as far as practicable, extend from the end of a runway strip to a distance of at least:

— 240 m where the code number is 3 or 4; or a reduced length when an arresting system is installed;

— 120 m where the code number is 1 or 2 and the runway is an instrument one; or a reduced length when an arresting system is installed; and

— 30 m where the code number is 1 or 2 and the runway is a non-instrument one.

3.5.5 The width of a runway end safety area shall be at least twice that of the associated runway.

3.5.6 The width of a runway end safety area should, wherever practicable, be equal to that of the graded portion of the associated runway strip.

Objects on runway end safety areas

Note.— See BAS 9.9 for information regarding siting of equipment and installations on runway end safety areas.

3.5.7 An object situated on a runway end safety area which may endanger aeroplanes should be regarded as an obstacle and should, as far as practicable, be removed.

Clearing and grading of runway end safety areas

3.5.8 A runway end safety area should provide a cleared and graded area for aeroplanes which the runway is intended to serve in the event of an aeroplane undershooting or overrunning the runway.

Note—The surface of the ground in the runway end safety area does not need to be prepared to the same quality as the runway strip. See, however, 3.5.12.

Slopes on runway end safety areas

3.5.9 General

— The slopes of a runway end safety area should be such that no part of the runway end safety area penetrates the approach or take-off climb surface.

3.5.10 Longitudinal slopes

— The longitudinal slopes of a runway end safety area should not exceed a downward slope of 5 per cent. Longitudinal slope changes should be as gradual as practicable and abrupt changes or sudden reversals of slopes avoided.

—

3.5.11 Transverse slopes

— The transverse slopes of a runway end safety area should not exceed an upward or downward slope of 5 per cent. Transitions between differing slopes should be as gradual as practicable.

Strength of runway end safety areas

3.5.12 A runway end safety area should be so prepared or constructed as to reduce the risk of damage to an aeroplane undershooting or overrunning the runway, enhance aeroplane deceleration and facilitate the movement of rescue and firefighting vehicles as required in 9.2.34 to 9.2.36.

Note— Guidance on the strength of a runway end safety area is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1.

3.6 Clearways

Note— The inclusion of detailed specifications for clearways in this section is not intended to imply that a clearway has to be provided. Attachment A, Section 2, provides information on the use of clearways.

Location of clearways

3.6.1 The origin of a clearway should be at the end of the take-off run available.

Length of clearways

3.6.2 The length of a clearway should not exceed half the length of the take-off run available.

Width of clearways

3.6.3 A clearway should extend laterally to a distance of at least 75 m on each side of the extended centre line of the runway.

Slopes on clearways

3.6.4 The ground in a clearway should not project above a plane having an upward slope of 1.25 per cent, the lower limit of this plane being a horizontal line which:

a) is perpendicular to the vertical plane containing the runway centre line; and

b) passes through a point located on the runway centre line at the end of the take-off run available.

Note— Because of transverse or longitudinal slopes on a runway, shoulder or strip, in certain cases the lower limit of the clearway plane specified above may be below the corresponding elevation of the runway, shoulder or strip. It is not intended that these surfaces be graded to conform with the lower limit of the clearway plane nor is it intended that terrain or objects which are above the clearway plane beyond the end of the strip but below the level of the strip be removed unless it is considered they may endanger aeroplanes.

3.6.5 Abrupt upward changes in slope should be avoided when the slope on the ground in a clearway is relatively small or when the mean slope is upward. In such situations, in that portion of the clearway within a distance of 22.5 m or half the runway width whichever is greater on each side of the extended centre line, the slopes, slope changes and the transition from runway to clearway should generally conform with those of the runway with which the clearway is associated.

Objects on clearways

Note— See BAS 9.9 for information regarding siting of equipment and installations on clearways.

3.6.6 An object situated on a clearway which may endanger aeroplanes in the air should be regarded as an obstacle and should be removed.

3.7 Stopways

Note—The inclusion of detailed specifications for stopways in this section is not intended to imply that a stopway has to be provided. Attachment A, Section 2, provides information on the use of stopways.

Width of stopways

3.7.1 A stopway shall have the same width as the runway with which it is associated.

Slopes on stopways

3.7.2 Slopes and changes in slope on a stopway, and the transition from a runway to a stopway, should comply with the specifications of 3.1.13 to 3.1.19 for the runway with which the stopway is associated except that:

a) the limitation in 3.1.14 of a 0.8 per cent slope for the first and last quarter of the length of a runway need not be applied to the stop way; and

b) at the junction of the stopway and runway and along the stopway the maximum rate of slope change may be 0.3 per cent per 30 m (minimum radius of curvature of 10 000 m) for a runway where the code number is 3 or 4.

Strength of stopways

3.7.3 A stopway should be prepared or constructed so as to be capable, in the event of an abandoned take-off, of supporting the aeroplane which the stopway is intended to serve without inducing structural damage to the aeroplane.

Note.— Attachment A, Section 2, presents guidance relative to the support capability of a stopway.

Surface of stopways

3.7.4 The surface of a paved stopway shall be so constructed or resurfaced as to provide surface friction characteristics at or above those of the associated runway.

3.8 Radio altimeter operating area

General

3.8.1 A radio altimeter operating area should be established in the pre-threshold area of a precision approach runway.

Length of the area

3.8.2 A radio altimeter operating area should extend before the threshold for a distance of at least 300 m.

Width of the area

3.8.3 A radio altimeter operating area should extend laterally, on each side of the extended centre line of the runway, to a distance of 60 m, except that, when special circumstances so warrant, the distance may be reduced to no less than 30 m if an aeronautical study indicates that such reduction would not affect the safety of operations of aircraft.

Longitudinal slope changes

3.8.4 On a radio altimeter operating area, slope changes should be avoided or kept to a minimum. Where slope changes cannot be avoided, the slope changes should be as gradual as practicable and abrupt changes or sudden reversals of slopes avoided. The rate of change between two consecutive slopes should not exceed 2 per cent per 30 m.

Note.— Guidance on radio altimeter operating area is given in Attachment A, Section 4.3, and in the Manual of All Weather Operations, (Doc 9365), Section 5.2. Guidance on the use of radio altimeter is given in the PANS-OPS, Volume II, Part II, Section 1.

3.9 Taxiways

Note 1— Unless otherwise indicated the requirements in this section are applicable to all types of taxiways.

Note 2—See Attachment A, Section 22, for specific taxiway design guidance which may assist in the prevention of runway incursions when developing a new taxiway or improving existing ones with known runway incursion safety risks.

General

3.9.1 Taxiways should be provided to permit the safe and expeditious surface movement of aircraft.

Note—Guidance on layout of taxiways is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

3.9.2 Sufficient entrance and exit taxiways for a runway should be provided to expedite the movement of aeroplanes to and from the runway and provision of rapid exit taxiways considered when traffic volumes are high.

3.9.3 The design of a taxiway shall be such that, when the cockpit of the aeroplane for which the taxiway is intended remains over the taxiway centre line markings, the clearance distance between the outer main wheel of the aeroplane and the edge of the taxiway shall be not less than that given by the following tabulation:

Code Letter	Clearance
A	1.5 m
B	2.25 m
C	3 m on straight portions; 3 m on curved portions if the taxiway is intended to be used by aeroplanes with a wheel base less than 18 m; 4.5 m on curved portions if the taxiway is intended to be used by aeroplanes with a wheel base equal or greater than 18 m;
D	4.5 m
E	4.5 m
F	4.5 m

Note 1—Wheel base means the distance from the nose gear to the geometric centre of the main gear.

Note 2—Where the code letter is F and the traffic density is high, a wheel-to-edge clearance greater than 4.5 m may be provided to permit higher taxiing speeds.

Note 3—This provision applies to taxiways first put into service on or after 20 November 2008.

Width of taxiways

3.9.4 A straight portion of a taxiway should have a width of not less than that given by the following tabulation:

Code Letter	Taxiway width
A	7.5 m
B	10.5 m
C	15 m
D	18 m if the taxiway is intended to be used by aeroplanes with an outer main gear wheel span of less than 9 m; 23 m if the taxiway is intended to be used by aeroplanes with an outer main gear wheel span equal to or greater than 9 m;
E	23 m
F	25 m

Note— Guidance on width of taxiways is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

Taxiway curves

3.9.5 Changes in direction of taxiways should be as few and small as possible. The radii of the curves should be compatible with the maneuvering capability and normal taxiing speeds of the aeroplanes for which the taxiway is intended. The design of the curve should be such that, when the cockpit of the aeroplane remains over the taxiway centre line markings, the clearance distance between the outer main wheels of the aeroplane and the edge of the taxiway should not be less than those specified in 3.9.3.

Note 1 -An example of widening taxiways to achieve the wheel clearance specified is illustrated in Figure 3-2. Guidance on the values of suitable dimensions is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

Note 2— The location of taxiway centre line markings is specified in 5.2.8.6

Note 3— Compound curves may reduce or eliminate the need for extra taxiway width.

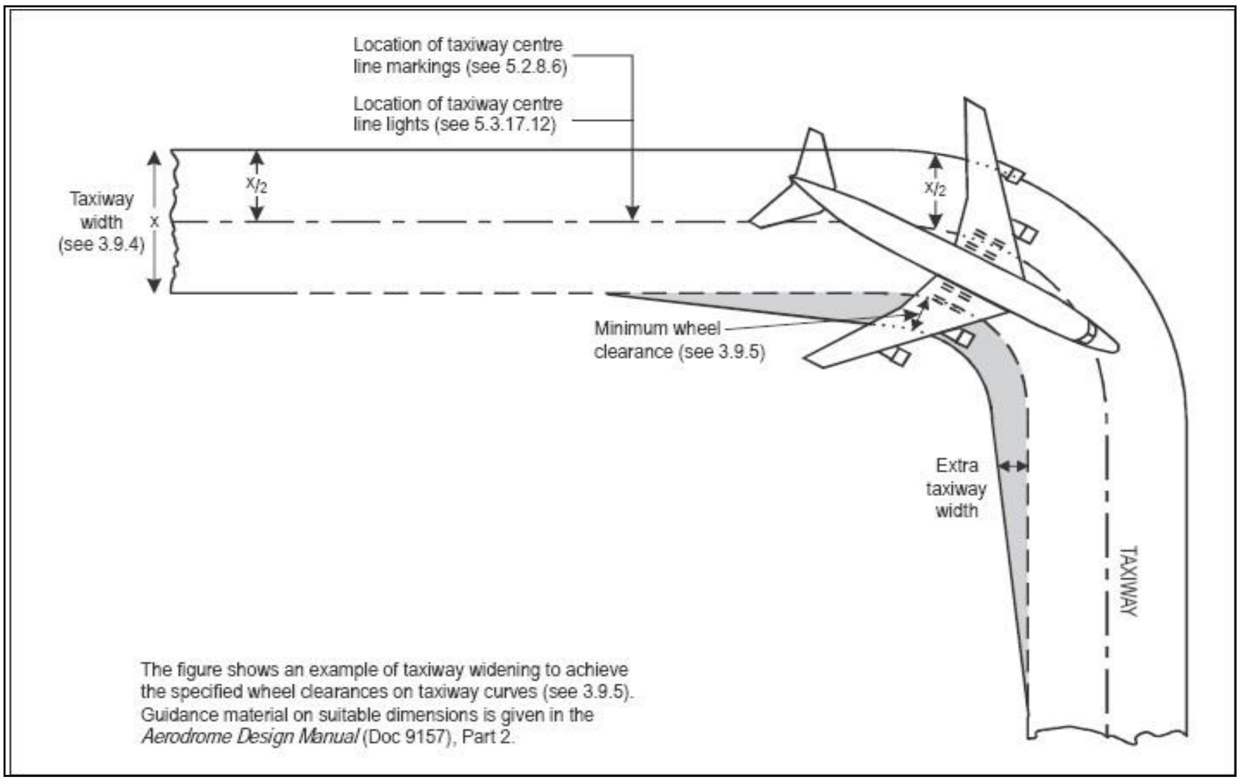


Figure 3-2. Taxiway curve

Junctions and intersections

3.9.6 To facilitate the movement of aeroplanes, fillets should be provided at junctions and intersections of taxiways with runways, aprons and other taxiways. The design of the fillets should ensure that the minimum wheel clearances specified in 3.9.3 are maintained when aeroplanes are maneuvering through the junctions or intersections.

Note—Consideration will have to be given to the aeroplane datum length when designing fillets. Guidance on the design of fillets and the definition of the term aeroplane datum length are given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc9157), Part 2.

Taxiway minimum separation distances

3.9.7 The separation distance between the centre line of a taxiway and the centre line of a runway, the centre line of a parallel taxiway or an object should not be less than the appropriate dimension specified in Table 3-1, except that it may be permissible to operate with lower separation distances at an existing aerodrome if an aeronautical study indicates that such lower separation distances would not adversely affect the safety or significantly affect the regularity of operations of aeroplanes.

Note 1—Guidance on factors which may be considered in the aeronautical study is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

Note 2— The separation distances of Table 3-1, column 10, do not necessarily provide the capability of making a normal turn from one taxiway to another parallel taxiway. Guidance for this condition is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

Note 3— The separation distance between the centre line of an aircraft stand taxilane and an object shown in Table3-1, column 13, may need to be increased when jet exhaust wake velocity may cause hazardous conditions for ground servicing.

Slopes on taxiways

3.9.8 Longitudinal slopes

The longitudinal slope of a taxiway should not exceed:

— 1.5 per cent where the code letter is C, D, E or F; and

— 3 per cent where the code letter is A or B.

3.9.9 Longitudinal slope changes

Where slope changes on a taxiway cannot be avoided, the transition from one slope to another slope should be accomplished by a curved surface with a rate of change not exceeding:

— 1 per cent per 30 m (minimum radius of curvature of 3 000 m) where the code letter is C, D, E or F; and
— 1 per cent per 25 m (minimum radius of curvature of 2 500 m) where the code letter is A or B.

Table 3-1. Taxiway minimum separation distances

Code letter	Distance between taxiway centre line and runway centre line (metres) — Instrument runways Code number 1	2	3	4	Non-instrument runways Code number 1	2	3	4	Taxiway centre line to taxiway centre line (metres)	Taxiway, other than aircraft stand taxilane, centre line to object (metres)	Aircraft stand taxilane centre line to aircraft stand taxilane centre line (metres)	Aircraft stand taxilane centre line to object (metres)
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)
A	82.5	82.5	–	–	37.5	47.5	–	–	23	15.5	19.5	12
B	87	87	–	–	42	52	–	–	32	20	28.5	16.5
C	–	–	168	–	–	–	93	–	44	26	40.5	22.5
D	–	–	176	176	–	–	101	101	63	37	59.5	33.5
E	–	–	–	182.5	–	–	–	107.5	76	43.5	72.5	40
F	–	–	–	190	–	–	–	115	91	51	87.5	47.5

Note 1—The separation distances shown in columns (2) to (9) represent ordinary combinations of runways and taxiways. The basis for development of these distances is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

Note 2—The distances in columns (2) to (9) do not guarantee sufficient clearance behind a holding aeroplane to permit the passing of another aeroplane on a parallel taxiway. See the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

3.9.10 Sight distance

— Where a change in slope on a taxiway cannot be avoided, the change should be such that, from any point:

— 3 m above the taxiway, it will be possible to see the whole surface of the taxiway for a distance of at least 300m from that point, where the code letter is C, D, E or F.

— 2 m above the taxiway, it will be possible to see the whole surface of the taxiway for a distance of at least 200m from that point, where the code letter is B; and

— 1.5 m above the taxiway, it will be possible to see the whole surface of the taxiway for a distance of atleast 150m from that point, where the code letter is A.

3.9.11 Transverse slopes

- The transverse slopes of a taxiway should be sufficient to prevent the accumulation of water on the surface of the taxiway but should not exceed:

— 1.5 per cent where the code letter is C, D, E or F; and

— 2 per cent where the code letter A or B.

Note — See 3.13.4 regarding transverse slopes on an aircraft stand taxilane.

Strength of taxiways

3.9.12 The strength of a taxiway should be at least equal to that of the runway it serves, due consideration being given to the fact that a taxiway will be subjected to a greater density of traffic and, as a result of slow moving and stationary aeroplanes, to higher stresses than the runway it serves.

Note.— Guidance on the relation of the strength of taxiways to the strength of runways is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3.

Surface of taxiways

3.9.13 The surface of a taxiway should not have irregularities that cause damage to aeroplane structures.

3.9.14 The surface of a paved taxiway should be so constructed or resurfaced as to provide suitable surface friction characteristics.

Note—Suitable surface friction characteristics are those surface properties required on taxiways that assure safe operation of aeroplanes.

Rapid exit taxiways

Note—The following specifications detail requirements particular to rapid exit taxiways. See Figure 3-3. General requirements for taxiways also apply to this type of taxiway. Guidance on the provision, location and design of rapid exit taxiways is included in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

3.9.15 A rapid exit taxiway should be designed with a radius of turn-off curve of at least:

— 550 m where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 275 m where the code number is 1 or 2;

to enable exit speeds under wet conditions of:

— 93 km/h where the code number is 3 or 4; and

— 65 km/h where the code number is 1 or 2.

Note— The locations of rapid exit taxiways along a runway are based on several criteria described in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2, in addition to different speed criteria.

3.9.16 The radius of the fillet on the inside of the curve at a rapid exit taxiway should be sufficient to provide a widened taxiway throat in order to facilitate early recognition of the entrance and turn-off onto the taxiway.

3.9.17 A rapid exit taxiway should include a straight distance after the turn-off curve sufficient for an exiting aircraft to come to a full stop clear of any intersecting taxiway.

3.9.18 The intersection angle of a rapid exit taxiway with the runway should not be greater than 45° nor less than 25° and preferably should be 30°.

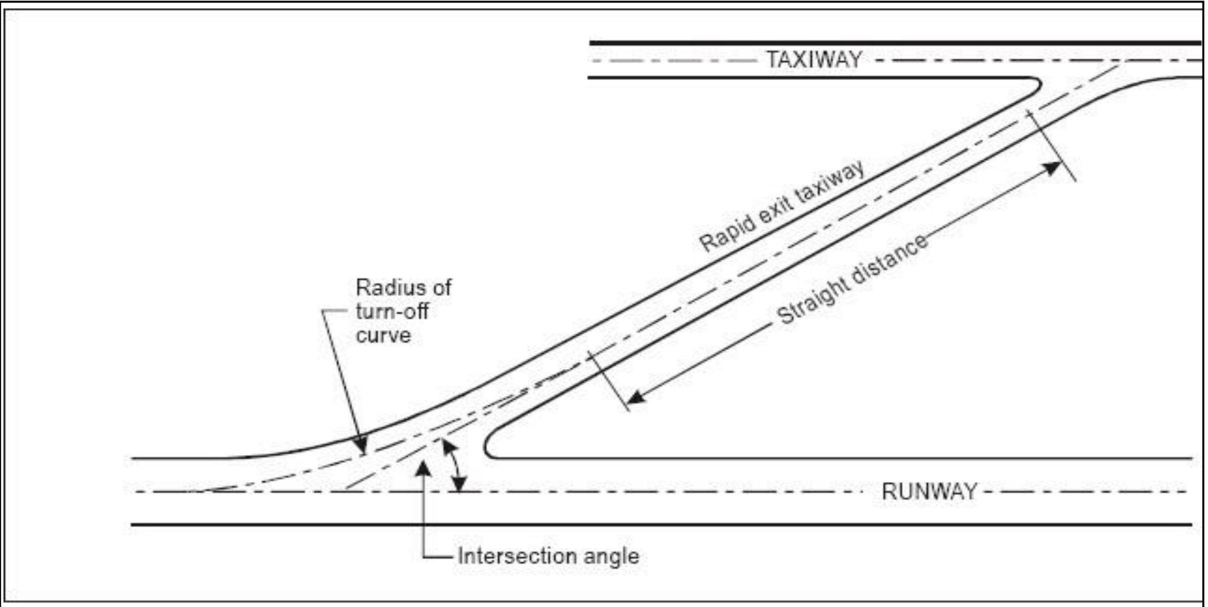


Figure 3-3. Rapid exit taxiway

Taxiways on bridges

3.9.19 The width of that portion of a taxiway bridge capable of supporting aeroplanes, as measured perpendicularly to the taxiway centre line, shall not be less than the width of the graded area of the strip provided for that taxiway, unless a proven method of lateral restraint is provided which shall not be hazardous for aeroplanes for which the taxiway is intended.

3.9.20 Access should be provided to allow rescue and firefighting vehicles to intervene in both directions within the specified response time to the largest aeroplane for which the taxiway bridge is intended.

Note — If aeroplane engines overhang the bridge structure, protection of adjacent areas below the bridge from engine blast may be required.

3.9.21 — A bridge should be constructed on a straight section of the taxiway with a straight section on both ends of the bridge to facilitate the alignment of aeroplanes approaching the bridge.

3.10 Taxiway shoulders

Note—Guidance on characteristics of taxiway shoulders and on shoulder treatment is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

3.10.1 Straight portions of a taxiway where the code letter is C, D, E or F should be provided with shoulders which extend symmetrically on each side of the taxiway so that the overall width of the taxiway and its shoulders on straight portions is not less than:

— 60 m where the code letter is F;
— 44 m where the code letter is E;
— 38 m where the code letter is D; and
— 25 m where the code letter is C.

On taxiway curves and on junctions or intersections where increased pavement is provided, the shoulder width should be not less than that on the adjacent straight portions of the taxiway.

3.10.2 When a taxiway is intended to be used by turbine-engined aeroplanes, the surface of the taxiway shoulder should be so prepared as to resist erosion and the ingestion of the surface material by aeroplane engines.

3.11 Taxiway strips

Note— Guidance on characteristics of taxiway strips is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

General

3.11.1 A taxiway, other than an aircraft stand taxilane, shall be included in a strip.

Width of taxiway strips

3.11.2 A taxiway strip should extend symmetrically on each side of the centre line of the taxiway throughout the length of the taxiway to at least the distance from the centre line given in Table 3-1, column 11.

Objects on taxiway strips

Note— See 9.9 for information regarding siting of equipment and installations on taxiway strips.

3.11.3 The taxiway strip should provide an area clear of objects which may endanger taxiing aeroplanes.

Note 1—Consideration will have to be given to the location and design of drains on a taxiway strip to prevent damage to an aeroplane accidentally running off a taxiway. Suitably designed drain covers may be required. For further guidance, see the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

Note 2—Where open-air or covered storm water conveyances are installed, consideration will have to be given to ensure that their structure does not extend above the surrounding ground so as not to be considered an obstacle. See also Note 1 to 3.11.6.

Note 3—Particular attention needs to be given to the design and maintenance of an open-air storm water conveyance in order to prevent wildlife attraction, notably birds. If needed, it can be covered by a net. Guidance on wildlife control and reduction can be found in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 3.

Grading of taxiway strips

3.11.4 The centre portion of a taxiway strip should provide a graded area to a distance from the centre line of the taxiway of at least:

— 11 m where the code letter is A;
— 12.5 m where the code letter is B or C;
— 19 m where the code letter is D;
— 22 m where the code letter is E; and
— 30 m where the code letter is F.

Slopes on taxiway strips

3.11.5 — The surface of the strip should be flush at the edge of the taxiway or shoulder, if provided, and the graded portion should not have an upward transverse slope exceeding:

— 2.5 per cent for strips where the code letter is C, D, E or F; and
— 3 per cent for strips of taxiways where the code letter is A or B;

the upward slope being measured with reference to the transverse slope of the adjacent taxiway surface and not the horizontal. The downward transverse slope should not exceed 5 per cent measured with reference to the horizontal.

3.11.6 The transverse slopes on any portion of a taxiway strip beyond that to be graded should not exceed an upward or downward slope of 5 per cent as measured in the direction away from the taxiway.

Note 1—Where deemed necessary for proper drainage, an open-air storm water conveyance may be allowed in the non-graded portion of a taxiway strip and would be placed as far as practicable from the taxiway.

Note 2—The aerodrome RFF procedure would need to take into account the location of open-air storm water conveyances within the non-graded portion of a taxiway strip.

3.12 Holding bays, runway-holding positions, intermediate holding positions and road-holding positions

General

3.12.1 Holding bay(s) should be provided when the traffic density is medium or heavy.

3.12.2 A runway-holding position or positions shall be established:

a) on the taxiway, at the intersection of a taxiway and a runway; and
b) at an intersection of a runway with another runway when the former runway is part of a standard taxi-route.

3.12.3 A runway-holding position shall be established on a taxiway if the location or alignment of the taxiway is such that a taxiing aircraft or vehicle can infringe an obstacle limitation surface or interfere with the operation of radio navigation aids.

3.12.4 An intermediate holding position should be established on a taxiway at any point other than a runway-holding position where it is desirable to define a specific holding limit.

3.12.5 A road-holding position shall be established at an intersection of a road with a runway.

Location

3.12.6 The distance between a holding bay, runway-holding position established at a taxiway/runway intersection or road-holding position and the centre line of a runway shall be in accordance with Table 3-2 and, in the case of a precision approach runway, such that a holding aircraft or vehicle will not interfere with the operation of radio navigation aids.

3.12.7 At elevations greater than 700 m (2 300 ft) the distance of 90 m specified in Table 3-2 for a precision approach runway code number 4 should be increased as follows:

a) up to an elevation of 2 000 m (6 600 ft); 1 m for every 100 m (330 ft) in excess of 700 m (2 300 ft);

b) elevation in excess of 2 000 m (6 600 ft) and up to 4 000 m (13 320 ft); 13 m plus 1.5 m for every 100 m (330ft) in excess of 2 000 m (6 600 ft); and

c) elevation in excess of 4 000 m (13 320 ft) and up to 5 000 m (16 650 ft); 43 m plus 2 m for every 100 m (330ft)in excess of 4 000 m (13 320 ft).

Table 3-2. Minimum distance from the runway centre line to a holding bay, runway-holding position or road-holding position

Code number	Type of runway				
	Non-instrument	Non-precision approach	Precision Category I	Precision Category II or III	Take-off runway
1	30 m	40 m	60 m [b]	-	30 m
2	40 m	40 m	60 m [b]	-	40 m
3	75 m	75 m	90 m [a, b]	90 m[a, b]	75 m
4	75 m	75 m	90 m [a, ,b, c]	90 m [a, b, c]	75 m

a. If a holding bay, runway-holding position or road-holding position is at a lower elevation compared to the threshold, the distance may be decreased 5 m for every metre the bay or holding position is lower than the threshold, contingent upon not infringing the inner transitional surface.

b. This distance may need to be increased to avoid interference with radio navigation aids, particularly the glide path and localizer facilities. Information on critical and sensitive areas of ILS and MLS is contained in Annex 10, Volume I, Attachments C and G, respectively (see also 3.12.6).

Note 1— The distance of 90 m for code number 3 or 4 is based on an aircraft with a tail height of 20 m, a distance from the nose to the highest part of the tail of 52.7 m and a nose height of 10 m holding at an angle of 45° or more with respect to the runway centre line, being clear of the obstacle free zone and not accountable for the calculation of OCA/H.

Note 2— The distance of 60 m for code number 2 is based on an aircraft with a tail height of 8 m, a distance from the nose to the highest part of the tail of 24.6 m and a nose height of 5.2 m holding at an angle of 45°or more with respect to the runway centre line, being clear of the obstacle free zone.

c. Where the code letter is F, this distance should be 107.5 m.

Note —The distance of 107.5 m for code number 4 where the code letter is F is based on an aircraft with a tail height of 24 m, a distance from the nose to the highest part of the tail of 62.2 m and a nose height of 10 m holding at an angle of 45° or more with respect to the runway centre line, being clear of the obstacle free zone.

3.12.8 If a holding bay, runway-holding position or road-holding position for a precision approach runway code number 4 is at a greater elevation compared to the threshold, the distance of 90 m or 107.5m,as appropriate, specified in Table 3-2 should be further increased 5 m for every metre the bay or position is higher than the threshold.

3.12.9 The location of a runway-holding position established in accordance with 3.12.3 shall be such that a holding aircraft or vehicle will not infringe the obstacle free zone, approach surface, take-off climb surface or ILS/MLS critical/ sensitive area or interfere with the operation of radio navigation aids.

3.13 Aprons

General

3.13.1 Aprons should be provided where necessary to permit the on- and off-loading of passengers, cargo or mail as well as the servicing of aircraft without interfering with the aerodrome traffic.

Size of aprons

3.13.2 The total apron area should be adequate to permit expeditious handling of the aerodrome traffic at its maximum anticipated density.

Strength of aprons

3.13.3 Each part of an apron should be capable of withstanding the traffic of the aircraft it is intended to serve, due consideration being given to the fact that some portions of the apron will be subjected to a higher density of traffic and, as a result of slow moving or stationary aircraft, to higher stresses than a runway.

Slopes on aprons

3.13.4 Slopes on an apron, including those on an aircraft stand taxilane, should be sufficient to prevent accumulation of water on the surface of the apron but should be kept as level as drainage requirements permit.

3.13.5 On an aircraft stand the maximum slope should not exceed 1 per cent.

Clearance distances on aircraft stands

3.13.6 An aircraft stand should provide the following minimum clearances between an aircraft entering or exiting the stand and any adjacent building, aircraft on another stand and other objects:

Code letter	Clearance
A	3 m
B	3 m
C	4.5 m
D	7.5 m
E	7.5 m
F	7.5 m

When special circumstances so warrant, these clearances may be reduced at a nose-in aircraft stand, where the code letter is D, E or F:

a) between the terminal, including any fixed passenger bridge, and the nose of an aircraft; and

b) over any portion of the stand provided with azimuth guidance by a visual docking guidance system.

Note—On aprons, consideration also has to be given to the provision of service roads and to maneuvering and storage area for ground equipment (see the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2, for guidance on storage of ground equipment).

3.14 Isolated aircraft parking position

3.14.1 An isolated aircraft parking position shall be designated or the aerodrome control tower shall be advised of an area or areas suitable for the parking of an aircraft which is known or believed to be the subject of unlawful interference, or which for other reasons needs isolation from normal aerodrome activities.

3.14.2 The isolated aircraft parking position should be located at the maximum distance practicable and in any case never less than 100 m from other parking positions, buildings or public areas, etc. Care should be taken to ensure that the position is not located over underground utilities such as gas and aviation fuel and, to the extent feasible, electrical or communication cables.

3.15 De-icing/anti-icing facilities

Note.—Safe and efficient aeroplane operations are of primary importance in the development of an aeroplane de-icing/anti-icing facility. For further guidance, see the Manual on Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations (Doc 9640).

General

3.15.1 Aeroplane de-icing/anti-icing facilities should be provided at an aerodrome where icing conditions are expected to occur.

Location

3.15.2 De-icing/anti-icing facilities should be provided either at aircraft stands or at specified remote areas along the taxiway leading to the runway meant for take-off, provided that adequate drainage arrangements for the collection and safe disposal of excess de-icing/anti-icing fluids are available to prevent ground water contamination. The effect of volume of traffic and departure flow rates should also be considered.

Note 1— One of the primary factors influencing the location of a de-icing/anti-icing facility is to ensure that the holdover time of the anti-icing treatment is still in effect at the end of taxiing and when take-off clearance of the treated aeroplane is given.

Note 2— Remote facilities compensate for changing weather conditions when icing conditions or blowing snow are expected to occur along the taxi-route taken by the aeroplane to the runway meant for take-off.

3.15.3 The remote de-icing/anti-icing facility should be located to be clear of the obstacle limitation surfaces specified in Chapter 4, not cause interference to the radio navigation aids and be clearly visible from the air traffic control tower for clearing the treated aeroplane.

3.15.4 The remote de-icing/anti-icing facility should be so located as to provide for an expeditious traffic flow, perhaps with a bypass configuration, and not require unusual taxiing manoeuvre into and out of the pads.

Note— The jet blast effects caused by a moving aeroplane on other aeroplanes receiving the anti-icing treatment or taxiing behind will have to be taken into account to prevent degradation of the treatment.

Size and number of de-icing/anti-icing pads

Note.— An aeroplane de-icing/anti-icing pad consists of

a) an inner area for parking of an aeroplane to be treated, and

b) an outer area for movement of two or more mobile de-icing/anti-icing equipment.

3.15.5 The size of a de-icing/anti-icing pad should be equal to the parking area required by the most demanding aeroplane in a given category with at least 3.8 m clear paved area all round the aeroplane for the movement of the de-icing/anti-icing vehicles.

Note—Where more than one de-icing/anti-icing pad is provided, consideration will have to be given to providing de-icing/anti-icing vehicle movement areas of adjacent pads that do not overlap, but are exclusive for each pad. Consideration will also need to be given to bypassing of the area by other aeroplanes with the clearances specified in 3.15.9 and 3.15.10.

3.15.6 The number of de-icing/anti-icing pads required should be determined based on the meteorological conditions, the type of aeroplanes to be treated, the method of application of de-icing/anti-icing fluid, the type and capacity of the dispensing equipment used, and the departure flow rates.

Note— See the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

Slopes on de-icing/anti-icing pads

3.15.7 The de-icing/anti-icing pads should be provided with suitable slopes to ensure satisfactory drainage of the area and to permit collection of all excess de-icing/anti-icing fluid running off an aeroplane. The maximum longitudinal slope should be as little as practicable and the transverse slope should not exceed 1 per cent.

Strength of de-icing/anti-icing pads

3.15.8 The de-icing/anti-icing pad should be capable of withstanding the traffic of the aircraft it is intended to serve, due consideration being given to the fact that the de-icing/anti-icing pad (like an apron) will be subjected to a higher density of traffic and, as a result of slow-moving or stationary aircraft, to higher stresses than a runway.

Clearance distances on a de-icing/anti-icing pad

3.15.9 A de-icing/anti-icing pad should provide the minimum clearances specified in 3.13.6 for aircraft stands. If the pad layout is such as to include bypass configuration, the minimum separation distances specified in Table 3-1, column 13, should be provided.

3.15.10 Where the de-icing/anti-icing facility is located adjoining a regular taxiway, the taxiway minimum separation distance specified in Table 3-1, column 11, should be provided. (See Figure 3-4.)

Environmental considerations

Note—The excess de-icing/anti-icing fluid running off an aeroplane poses the risk of contamination of ground water in addition to affecting the pavement surface friction characteristics.

3.15.11 Where de-icing/anti-icing activities are carried out, the surface drainage should be planned to collect the run-off separately, preventing its mixing with the normal surface run-off so that it does not pollute the ground water.

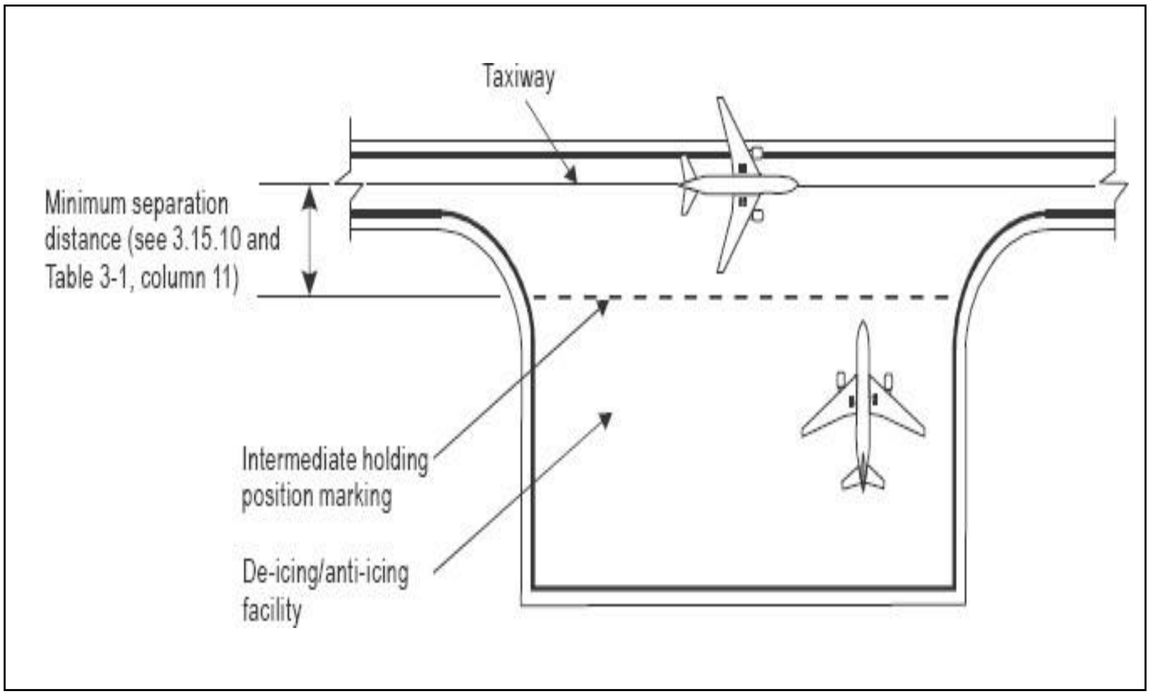


Figure 3-4. Minimum separation distance on a de-icing/anti-icing facility

CHAPTER 4. OBSTACLE RESTRICTION AND REMOVAL

Note 1—The objectives of the specifications in this chapter are to define the airspace around aerodromes to be maintained free from obstacles so as to permit the intended aeroplane operations at the aerodromes to be conducted safely and to prevent the aerodromes from becoming unusable by the growth of obstacles around the aerodromes. This is achieved by establishing a series of obstacle limitation surfaces that define the limits to which objects may project into the airspace.

Note 2—Objects which penetrate the obstacle limitation surfaces contained in this chapter may in certain circumstances cause an increase in the obstacle clearance altitude/height for an instrument approach procedure or any associated visual circling procedure or have other operational impact on flight procedure design. Criteria for flight procedure design are contained in the Procedures for Air Navigation Services —Aircraft Operations (PANS-OPS, Doc 8168).

Note 3—The establishment of, and requirements for, an obstacle protection surface for visual approach slope indicator systems are specified in 5.3.5.42 to 5.3.5.46.

4.1 Obstacle limitation surfaces

Note— See Figure 4-1.

Outer horizontal surface

Note—Guidance on the need to provide an outer horizontal surface and its characteristics is contained in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 6.

Conical surface

4.1.1 Description—Conical surface. A surface sloping upwards and outwards from the periphery of the inner horizontal surface.

4.1.2 Characteristics—The limits of the conical surface shall comprise:

a) a lower edge coincident with the periphery of the inner horizontal surface; and

b) an upper edge located at a specified height above the inner horizontal surface.

4.1.3 The slope of the conical surface shall be measured in a vertical plane perpendicular to the periphery of the inner horizontal surface.

Inner horizontal surface

4.1.4 Description—Inner horizontal surface. A surface located in a horizontal plane above an aerodrome and its environs.

4.1.5 Characteristics—The radius or outer limits of the inner horizontal surface shall be measured from a reference point or points established for such purpose.

Note—The shape of the inner horizontal surface need not necessarily be circular. Guidance on determining the extent of the inner horizontal surface is contained in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 6.

4.1.6 The height of the inner horizontal surface shall be measured above an elevation datum established for such purpose.

Note—Guidance on determining the elevation datum is contained in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 6.

Approach surface

4.1.7 Description—Approach surface. An inclined plane or combination of planes preceding the threshold.

4.1.8 Characteristics—The limits of the approach surface shall comprise:

a) an inner edge of specified length, horizontal and perpendicular to the extended centre line of the runway and located at a specified distance before the threshold;

b) two sides originating at the ends of the inner edge and diverging uniformly at a specified rate from the extended centre line of the runway;

c) an outer edge parallel to the inner edge; and

d) the above surfaces shall be varied when lateral offset, offset or curved approaches are utilized, specifically, two sides originating at the ends of the inner edge and diverging uniformly at a specified rate from the extended centre line of the lateral offset, offset or curved ground track.

4.1.9 The elevation of the inner edge shall be equal to the elevation of the midpoint of the threshold.

4.1.10 The slope(s) of the approach surface shall be measured in the vertical plane containing the centre line of the runway and shall continue containing the centre line of any lateral offset or curved ground track.

Note— See Figure 4-2.

Inner approach surface

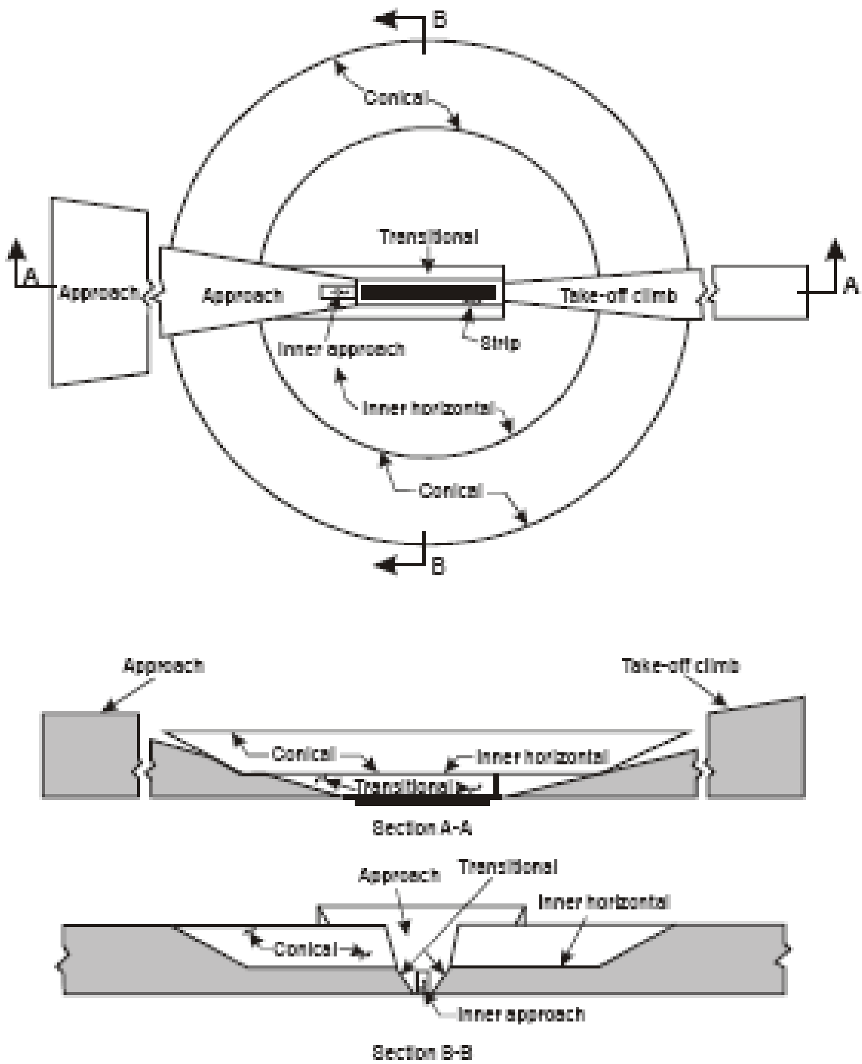
4.1.11 Description—Inner approach surface. A rectangular portion of the approach surface immediately preceding the threshold.

4.1.12 Characteristics—The limits of the inner approach surface shall comprise:

a) an inner edge coincident with the location of the inner edge of the approach surface but of its own specified length;

b) two sides originating at the ends of the inner edge and extending parallel to the vertical plane containing the centre line of the runway; and

c) an outer edge parallel to the inner edge.



See Figure 4-2 for inner transitional and balked landing obstacle limitation surfaces and Attachment B for a three-dimensional view

Figure 4-1. Obstacle limitation surfaces

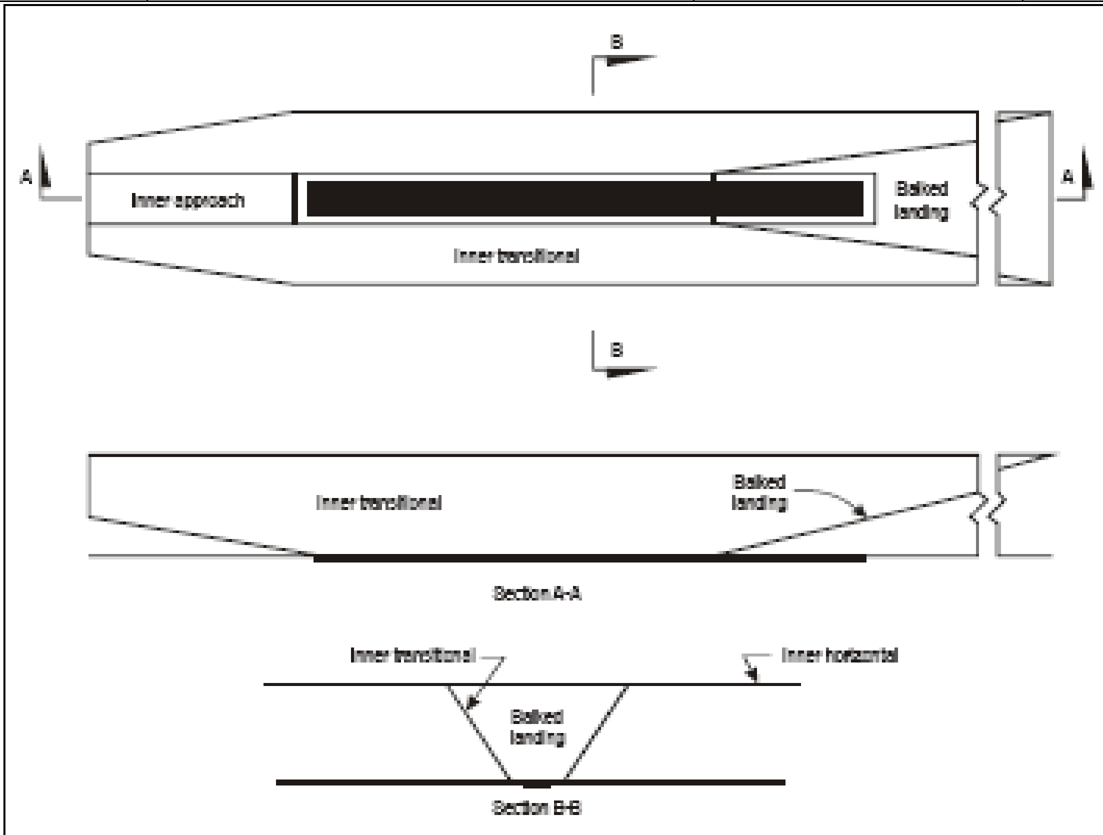


Figure 4-2. Inner approach, inner transitional and balked landing obstacle limitation surfaces

See Figure 4-2 for inner transitional and balked landing obstacle limitation surfaces and Attachment B for a three-dimensional view

Transitional surface

4.1.13 Description.—Transitional surface. A complex surface along the side of the strip and part of the side of the approach surface, that slopes upwards and outwards to the inner horizontal surface.

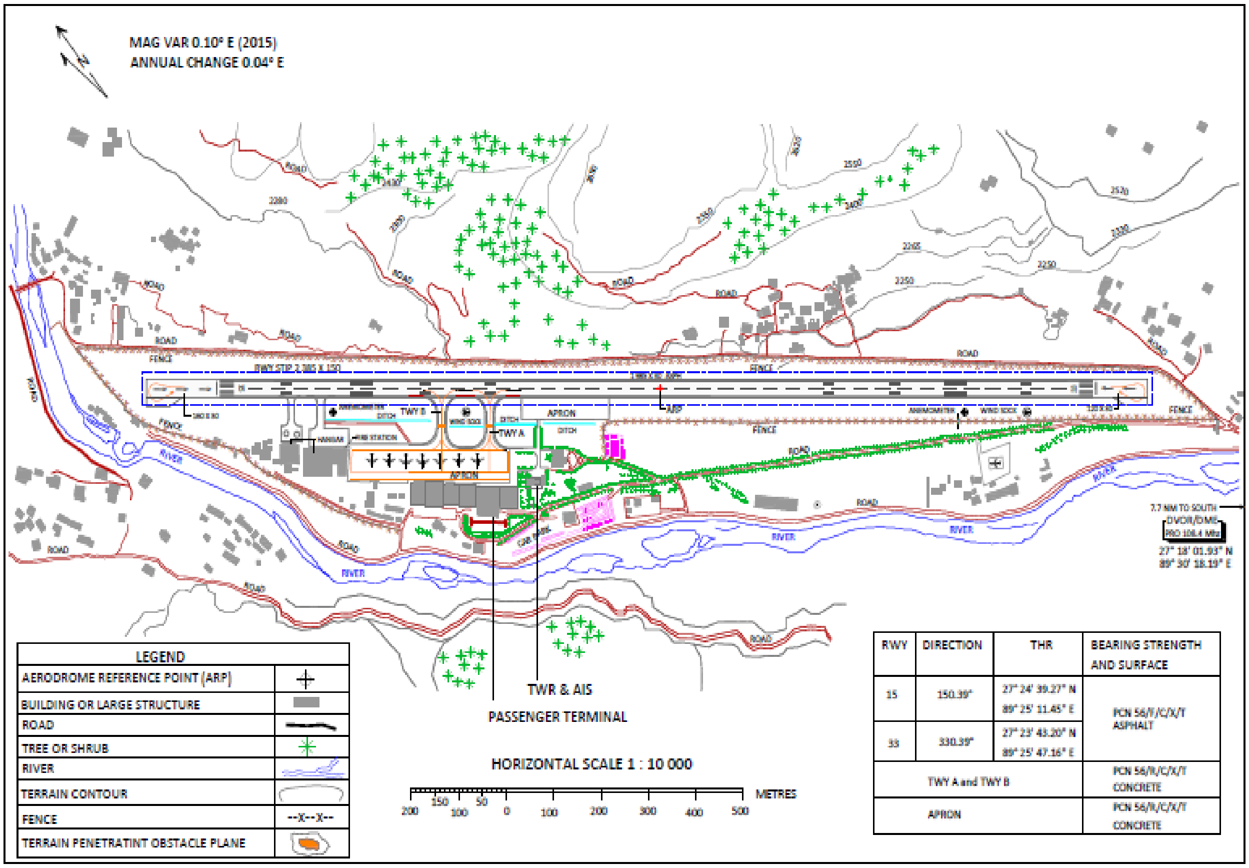
4.1.14 Characteristics.—The limits of a transitional surface shall comprise:

a) a lower edge beginning at the intersection of the side of the approach surface with the inner horizontal surface and extending down the side of the approach surface to the inner edge of the approach surface and from there along the length of the strip parallel to the runway centre line; and

b) an upper edge located in the plane of the inner horizontal surface.

4.1.15 The elevation of a point on the lower edge shall be:

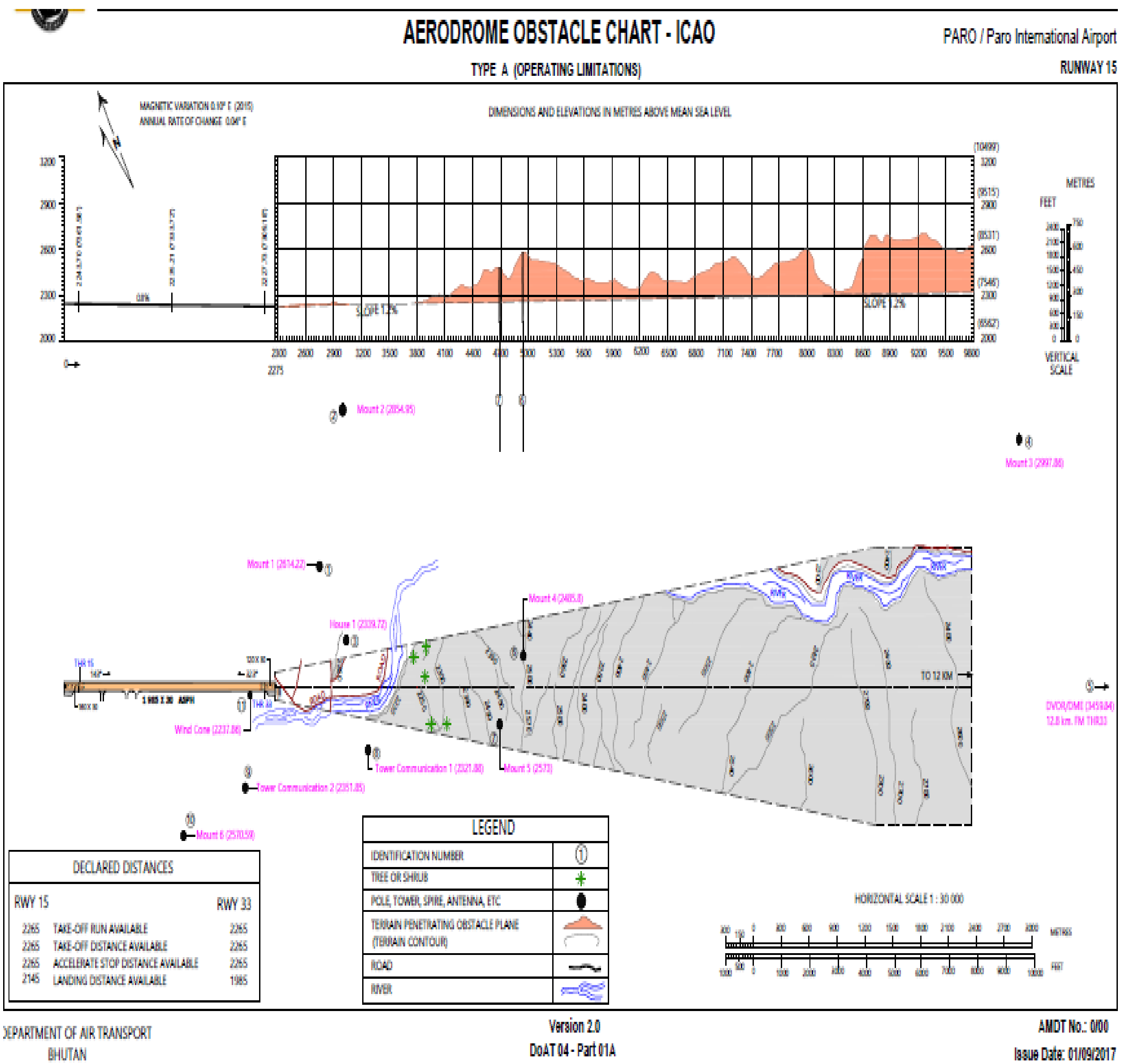
a) along the side of the approach surface — equal to the elevation of the approach surface at that point; and



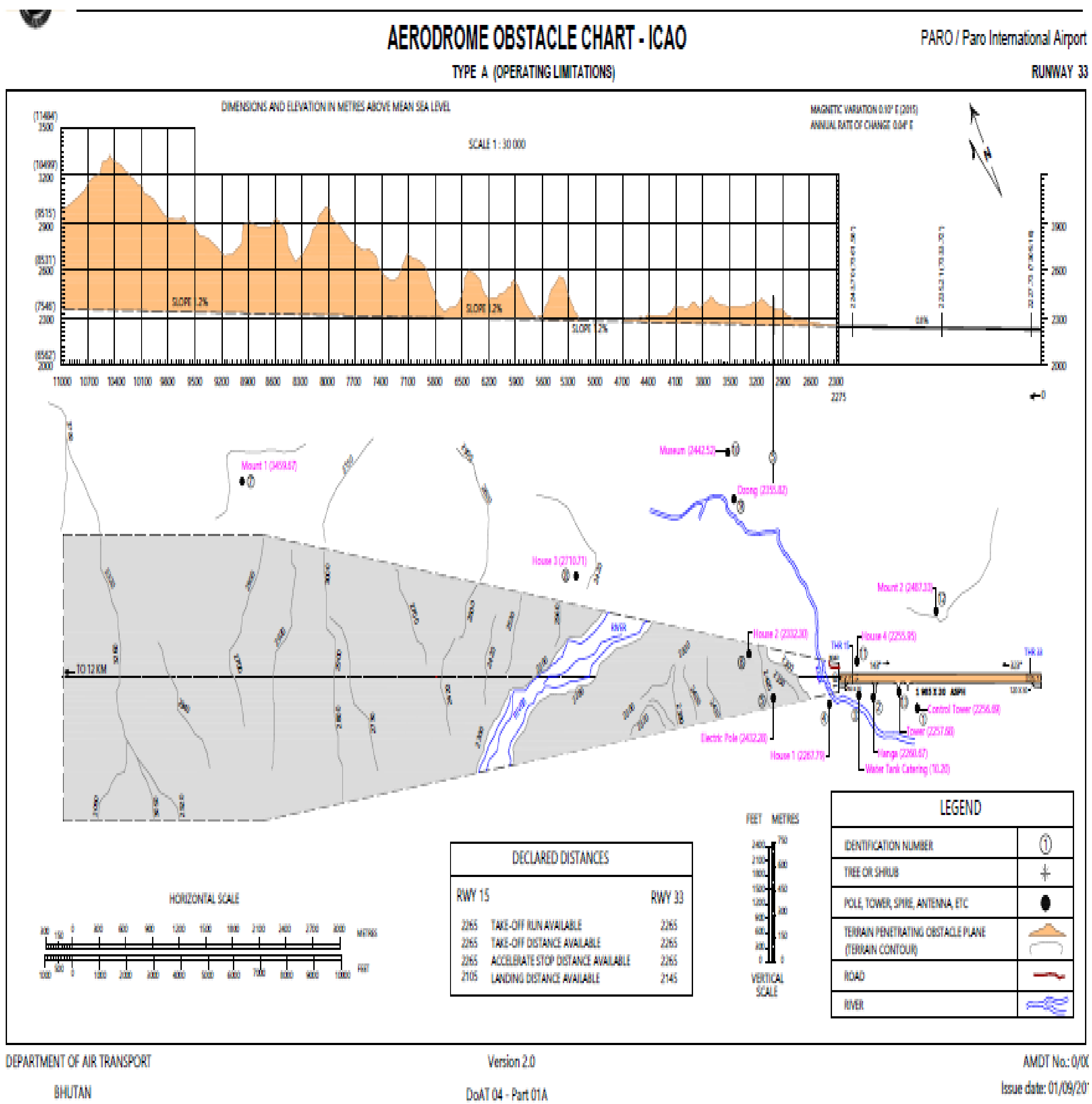
DEPARTMENT OF AIR TRANSPORT
BHUTAN

Version 2.0
DoAT 04 - Part 01A

AMDT No. 0/00
Issue Date: 01/09/ 201



AERODROME OBSTACLE CHART - ICAO
PARO / Paro International Airport
TYPE A (OPERATING LIMITATIONS)
RUNWAY 15
DIMENSIONS AND ELEVATIONS IN METRES ABOVE MEAN SEA LEVEL
SLOPE 1.2%
SLOPE 1.2%
METRES
FEET
VERTICAL SCALE
Mount 2 (2654.95)
Mount 3 (2997.88)
Mount 1 (2614.22)
Mount 4 (2405.8)
House 1 (2339.72)
THR 15
THR 33
Wind Cone (2237.88)
Tower Communication 1 (2321.88)
Mount 5 (2573)
Tower Communication 2 (2351.85)
Mount 6 (2570.59)
TO 12 KM
DVOR/DME (3459.04)
12.8 km. FM THR33
RIVER
LEGEND
IDENTIFICATION NUMBER
TREE OR SHRUB
POLE, TOWER, SPIRE, ANTENNA, ETC
TERRAIN PENETRATING OBSTACLE PLANE (TERRAIN CONTOUR)
ROAD
RIVER
DECLARED DISTANCES
RWY 15 RWY 33
2265 TAKE-OFF RUN AVAILABLE 2265
2265 TAKE-OFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE 2265
2265 ACCELERATE STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE 2265
2145 LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE 1985
HORIZONTAL SCALE 1 : 30 000
DEPARTMENT OF AIR TRANSPORT
BHUTAN
Version 2.0
DoAT 04 - Part 01A
AMDT No.: 0/00
Issue Date: 01/09/2017



b) along the strip — equal to the elevation of the nearest point on the centre line of the runway or its extension.

Note— As a result of b) the transitional surface along the strip will be curved if the runway profile is curved, or a plane if the runway profile is a straight line. The intersection of the transitional surface with the inner horizontal surface will also be a curved or a straight line depending on the runway profile.

4.1.3 The slope of the transitional surface shall be measured in a vertical plane at right angles to the centre line of the runway.

Inner transitional surface

Note—It is intended that the inner transitional surface be the controlling obstacle limitation surface for navigation aids, aircraft and other vehicles that must be near the runway and which is not to be penetrated except for frangible objects. The transitional surface described in 4.1.13 is intended to remain as the controlling obstacle limitation surface for buildings, etc.

4.1.4 Description — Inner transitional surface. A surface similar to the transitional surface but closer to the runway.

4.1.5 Characteristics—The limits of an inner transitional surface shall comprise:

a) a lower edge beginning at the end of the inner approach surface and extending down the side of the inner approach surface to the inner edge of that surface, from there along the strip parallel to the runway centre line to the inner edge of the balked landing surface and from there up the side of the balked landing surface to the point where the side intersects the inner horizontal surface; and

b) an upper edge located in the plane of the inner horizontal surface.

4.1.6 The elevation of a point on the lower edge shall be:

a) along the side of the inner approach surface and balked landing surface— equal to the elevation of the particular surface at that point; and

b) along the strip — equal to the elevation of the nearest point on the centre line of the runway or its extension.

Note— As a result of b) the inner transitional surface along the strip will be curved if the runway profile is curved or a plane if the runway profile is a straight line.

The intersection of the inner transitional surface with the inner horizontal surface will also be a curved or straight line depending on the runway profile.

4.1.20 The slope of the inner transitional surface shall be measured in a vertical plane at right angles to the centre line of the runway.

Balked landing surface

4.1.21 Description.—Balked landing surface. An inclined plane located at a specified distance after the threshold, extending between the inner transitional surface.

4.1.22 Characteristics.—The limits of the balked landing surface shall comprise:

a) an inner edge horizontal and perpendicular to the centre line of the runway and located at a specified distance after the threshold;

b) two sides originating at the ends of the inner edge and diverging uniformly at a specified rate from the vertical plane containing the centre line of the runway; and

c) an outer edge parallel to the inner edge and located in the plane of the inner horizontal surface.

4.1.23 The elevation of the inner edge shall be equal to the elevation of the runway centre line at the location of the inner edge.

4.1.24 The slope of the balked landing surface shall be measured in the vertical plane containing the centre line of the runway.

Take-off climb surface

4.1.25 Description—Take-off climb surface. An inclined plane or other specified surface beyond the end of a runway or clearway.

4.1.26 Characteristics.— The limits of the take-off climb surface shall comprise:

a) an inner edge horizontal and perpendicular to the centre line of the runway and located either at a specified distance beyond the end of the runway or at the end of the clearway when such is provided and its length exceeds the specified distance;

b) two sides originating at the ends of the inner edge, diverging uniformly at a specified rate from the take-off track to a specified final width and continuing thereafter at that width for the remainder of the length of the take-off climb surface; and

c) an outer edge horizontal and perpendicular to the specified take-off track.

4.1.27 The elevation of the inner edge shall be equal to the highest point on the extended runway centre line between the end of the runway and the inner edge, except that when a clearway is provided the elevation shall be equal to the highest point on the ground on the centre line of the clearway.

4.1.28 In the case of a straight take-off flight path, the slope of the take-off climb surface shall be measured in the vertical plane containing the centre line of the runway.

4.1.29 In the case of a take-off flight path involving a turn, the take-off climb surface shall be a complex surface containing the horizontal normals to its centre line, and the slope of the centre line shall be the same as that for a straight take- off flight path.

4.2 Obstacle limitation requirements

Note.—The requirements for obstacle limitation surfaces are specified on the basis of the intended use of a runway, i.e. take-off or landing and type of approach, and are intended to be applied when such use is made of the runway. In cases where operations are conducted to or from both directions of a runway, then the function of certain surfaces may be nullified because of more stringent requirements of another lower surface.

Non-instrument runways

4.2.1 The following obstacle limitation surfaces shall be established for a non- instrument runway:

— conical surface;
— inner horizontal surface;
— approach surface; and
— transitional surfaces.

4.2.2 The heights and slopes of the surfaces shall not be greater than, and their other dimensions not less than, those specified in Table 4-1.

4.2.3 New objects or extensions of existing objects shall not be permitted above an approach or transitional surface except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the new object or extension would be shielded by an existing immovable object.

Note.— Circumstances in which the shielding principle may reasonably be applied are described in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 6.

4.2.4 New objects or extensions of existing objects should not be permitted above the conical surface or inner horizontal surface except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the object would be shielded by an existing immovable object, or after aeronautical study it is determined that the object would not adversely affect the safety or significantly affect the regularity of operations of aeroplanes.

4.2.5 Existing objects above any of the surfaces required by 4.2.1 should as far as practicable be removed except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the object is shielded by an existing immovable object, or after aeronautical study it is determined that the object would not adversely affect the safety or significantly affect the regularity of operations of aeroplanes.

Note.—Because of transverse or longitudinal slopes on a strip, in certain cases the inner edge or portions of the inner edge of the approach surface may be below the corresponding elevation of the strip. It is not intended that the strip be graded to conform with the inner edge of the approach surface, nor is it intended that terrain or objects which are above the approach surface beyond the end of the strip, but below the level of the strip, be removed unless it is considered they may endanger aeroplanes.

4.2.6 In considering proposed construction, account should be taken of the possible future development of an instrument runway and consequent requirement for more stringent obstacle limitation surfaces.

Non-precision approach runways

4.2.7 The following obstacle limitation surfaces shall be established for a non- precision approach runway:

— conical surface;
— inner horizontal surface;
— approach surface; and
— transitional surfaces

4.2.8 The heights and slopes of the surfaces shall not be greater than, and their other dimensions not less than, those specified in Table 4-1, except in the case of the horizontal section of the approach surface (see 4.2.9).

4.2.9 The approach surface shall be horizontal beyond the point at which the 2.5 per cent slope intersects:

a) a horizontal plane 150 m above the threshold elevation; or

b) the horizontal plane passing through the top of any object that governs the obstacle clearance altitude/height (OCA/H); whichever is the higher

Table 4-1. Dimensions and slopes of obstacle limitation surfaces —Approach runways

APPROACH RUNWAYS

	RUNWAY CLASSIFICATION									
	Non-instrument Code number				Non-precision approach Code number			Precision approach category I Code number		Precision approach category II or III Code number
Surface and dimensions[a] (1)	1 (2)	2 (3)	3 (4)	4 (5)	1,2 (6)	3 (7)	4 (8)	1,2 (9)	3,4 (10)	3,4 (11)
CONICAL										
Slope	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%
Height	35 m	55 m	75 m	100 m	60 m	75 m	100 m	60 m	100 m	100 m
INNER HORIZONTAL										
Height	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m
Radius	2 000 m	2 500 m	4 000 m	4 000 m	3 500 m	4 000 m	4 000 m	3 500 m	4 000 m	4 000 m
INNER APPROACH										
Width	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	90 m	120 m[e]	120 m[e]
Distance from threshold	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	60 m	60 m	60 m
Length	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	900 m	900 m	900 m
Slope								2.5%	2%	2%
APPROACH										
Length of inner edge	60 m	80 m	150 m	150 m	150 m	300 m	300 m	150 m	300 m	300 m
Distance from threshold	30 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m
Divergence (each side)	10%	10%	10%	10%	15%	15%	15%	15%	15%	15%
First section										
Length	1 600 m	2 500 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	2 500 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	3 000 m
Slope	5%	4%	3.33%	2.5%	3.33%	2%	2%	2.5%	2%	2%
Second section										
Length	—	—	—	—	—	3 600 m[b]	3 600 m[b]	12 000 m	3 600 m[b]	3 600 m[b]
Slope	—	—	—	—	—	2.5%	2.5%	3%	2.5%	2.5%
Horizontal section										
Length	—	—	—	—	—	8 400 m[b]	8 400 m[b]	—	8 400 m[b]	8 400 m[b]
Total length	—	—	—	—	—	15 000 m	15 000 m	15 000 m	15 000 m	15 000 m
TRANSITIONAL										
Slope	20%	20%	14.3%	14.3%	20%	14.3%	14.3%	14.3%	14.3%	14.3%
INNER TRANSITIONAL										
Slope	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	40%	33.3%	33.3%
BALKED LANDING SURFACE										
Length of inner edge	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	90 m	120 m[e]	120 m[e]
Distance from threshold	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	c	1 800 m[d]	1 800 m[d]
Divergence (each side)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	10%	10%	10%
Slope	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4%	3.33%	3.33%

Notes to Table 4.1

a) All dimensions are measured horizontally unless specified otherwise.
b) Variable length (see 4.2.9 or 4.2.17).
c) Distance to the end of strip.
d) Or end of runway whichever is less
e) Where the code letter is F (Table 1-1), the width is increased to 140 m except for those aerodromes that accommodate a code letter F aeroplane equipped with digital avionics that provide steering commands to maintain an established track during the go-around manoeuvre

Note.- See Circulars 301 and 345, and Chapter 4 of the PANS-Aerodromes, Part I (Doc 9981) for further information

4.2.10 New objects or extensions of existing objects shall not be permitted above an approach surface within 3 000 m of the inner edge or above a transitional surface except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the new object or extension would be shielded by an existing immovable object.

Note— Circumstances in which the shielding principle may reasonably be applied are described in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 6.

4.2.11 New objects or extensions of existing objects should not be permitted above the approach surface beyond 3 000 m from the inner edge, the conical surface or inner horizontal surface except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the object would be shielded by an existing immovable object, or after aeronautical study it is determined that the object would not adversely affect the safety or significantly affect the regularity of operations of aeroplanes.

4.2.12 Existing objects above any of the surfaces required by 4.2.7 should as far as practicable be removed except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the object is shielded by an existing immovable object, or after aeronautical study it is determined that the object would not adversely affect the safety or significantly affect the regularity of operations of aeroplanes.

Note— Because of transverse or longitudinal slopes on a strip, in certain cases the inner edge or portions of the inner edge of the approach surface may be below the corresponding elevation of the strip. It is not intended that the strip be graded to conform with the inner edge of the approach surface, nor is it intended that terrain or objects which are above the approach surface beyond the end of the strip, but below the level of the strip, be removed unless it is considered they may endanger aeroplanes.

Precision approach runways

Note 1.— See 9.9 for information regarding siting of equipment and installations on operational areas.

Note 2.— Guidance on obstacle limitation surfaces for precision approach runways is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 6.

4.2.13 The following obstacle limitation surfaces shall be established for a precision approach runway category I:
— conical surface;
— inner horizontal surface;
— approach surface; and
— transitional surfaces.

4.2.14 — The following obstacle limitation surfaces should be established for a precision approach runway category I:
— inner approach surface;
— inner transitional surfaces; and
— balked landing surface.

4.2.15 The following obstacle limitation surfaces shall be established for a precision approach runway category II or III:
— conical surface;

— inner horizontal surface;
— approach surface and inner approach surface;
— transitional surfaces;
— inner transitional surfaces; and
— balked landing surface.

4.2.16 The heights and slopes of the surfaces shall not be greater than, and their other dimensions not less than, those specified in Table 4-1, except in the case of the horizontal section of the approach surface (see 4.2.14).

4.2.17 The approach surface shall be horizontal beyond the point at which the 2.5 per cent slope intersects:

a) a horizontal plane 150 m above the threshold elevation; or
b) the horizontal plane passing through the top of any object that governs the **obstacle clearance limit; whichever is the higher.**

4.2.18 Fixed objects shall not be permitted above the inner approach surface, the inner transitional surface or the balked landing surface, except for frangible objects which because of their function must be located on the strip. Mobile objects shall not be permitted above these surfaces during the use of the runway for landing.

4.2.19 New objects or extensions of existing objects shall not be permitted above an approach surface or a transitional surface except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the new object or extension would be shielded by an existing immovable object.

Note.— Circumstances in which the shielding principle may reasonably be applied are described in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 6

4.2.20 New objects or extensions of existing objects should not be permitted above the conical surface and the inner horizontal surface except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, an object would be shielded by an existing immovable object, or after aeronautical study it is determined that the object would not adversely affect the safety or significantly affect the regularity of operations of aeroplanes.

4.2.21 Existing objects above an approach surface, a transitional surface, the conical surface and inner horizontal surface should as far as practicable be removed except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, an object is shielded by an existing immovable object, or after aeronautical study it is determined that the object would not adversely affect the safety or significantly affect the regularity of operations of aeroplanes.

Note— Because of transverse or longitudinal slopes on a strip, in certain cases the inner edge or portions of the inner edge of the approach surface may be below the corresponding elevation of the strip. It is not intended that the strip be graded to conform with the inner edge of the approach surface, nor is it intended that terrain or objects which are above the approach surface beyond the end of the strip, but below the level of the strip, be removed unless it is considered they may endanger aeroplanes.

Runways meant for take-off

4.2.22 The following obstacle limitation surface shall be established for a runway meant for take-off:

— take-off climb surface.

4.2.23 The dimensions of the surface shall be not less than the dimensions specified in Table 4-2, except that a lesser length may be adopted for the take-off climb surface where such lesser length would be consistent with procedural measures adopted to govern the outward flight of aeroplanes.

4.2.24 The operational characteristics of aeroplanes for which the runway is intended should be examined to see if it is desirable to reduce the slope specified in Table 4-2 when critical operating conditions are to be catered to. If the specified slope is reduced, corresponding adjustment in the length of the take-off climb surface should be made so as to provide protection to a height of 300 m.

Note—When local conditions differ widely from sea level standard atmospheric conditions, it may be advisable for the slope specified in Table 4-2 to be reduced. The degree of this reduction depends on the divergence between local conditions and sea level standard atmospheric conditions, and on the performance characteristics and operational requirements of the aeroplanes for which the runway is intended.

4.2.25 New objects or extensions of existing objects shall not be permitted above a take-off climb surface except when in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the new object or extension would be shielded by an existing immovable object.

Note— Circumstances in which the shielding principle may reasonably be applied are described in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 6.

4.2.26 If no object reaches the 2 per cent (1:50) take-off climb surface, new objects should be limited to preserve the existing obstacle free surface or a surface down to a slope of 1.6 per cent (1:62.5).

Table 4-2. Dimensions and slopes of obstacle limitation surfaces

RUNWAYS MEANT FOR TAKE-OFF

	Code number		
Surface and dimensions[a] (1) (2)	1	2 (3)	3 or 4 (4)
TAKE-OFF CLIMB			
Length of inner edge	60 m	80 m	180 m
Distance from runway end[b]	30 m	60 m	60 m
Divergence (each side)	10%	10%	12.5%
Final width	380 m	580 m	1 200 m 1 800 m[c]
Length 1 600 m		2 500 m	15 00 m
Slope 5%	4%	2%[d]	

a) All dimensions are measured horizontally unless specified otherwise.

b) The take-off climb surface starts at the end of the clearway if the clearway length exceeds the specified distance.

c) 1 800 m when the intended track includes changes of heading greater than 15° for operations conducted in IMC, VMC by night.

d) See 4.2.21 and 4.2.23.

4.2.27 Existing objects that extend above a take-off climb surface should as far as practicable be removed except when, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, an object is shielded by an existing immovable object, or after aeronautical study it is determined that the object would not adversely affect the safety or significantly affect the regularity of operations of aeroplanes.

Note— Because of transverse slopes on a strip or clearway, in certain cases portions of the inner edge of the take-off climb surface may be below the corresponding elevation of the strip or clearway. It is not intended that the strip or clear way be graded to conform with the inner edge of the take-off climb surface, nor is it intended that terrain or objects which are above the take-off climb surface beyond the end of the strip or clearway, but below the level of the strip or clearway, be removed unless it is considered they may endanger aeroplanes. Similar considerations apply at the junction of a clearway and strip where differences in transverse slopes exist.

43 Objects outside the obstacle limitation surfaces

4.3.1 Arrangements should be made to enable the appropriate authority to be consulted concerning proposed construction beyond the limits of the obstacle limitation surfaces that extend above a height established by that authority, in order to permit an aeronautical study of the effect of such construction on the operation of aeroplanes.

4.3.2 In areas beyond the limits of the obstacle limitation surfaces, at least those objects which extend to a height of 150 m or more above ground elevation should be regarded as obstacles, unless a special aeronautical study indicates that they do not constitute a hazard to aeroplanes.

Note— This study may have regard to the nature of operations concerned and may distinguish between day and night operations.

4.4 Other objects

4.4.1 Objects which do not project through the approach surface but which would nevertheless adversely affect the optimum siting or performance of visual or non- visual aids should, as far as practicable, be removed.

4.4.2 Anything which may, in the opinion of the appropriate authority after aeronautical study, endanger aeroplanes on the movement area or in the air within the limits of the inner horizontal and conical surfaces should be regarded as an obstacle and should be removed in so far as practicable.

Note—In certain circumstances, objects that do not project above any of the surfaces enumerated in 4.1 may constitute a hazard to aeroplanes as, for example, where there are one or more isolated objects in the vicinity of an aerodrome.

CHAPTER 5 VISUAL AIDS FOR NAVIGATION

5.1 Indicators and signalling devices

5.1.1 Wind direction indicator

Application

5.1.1.1 An aerodrome shall be equipped with at least one wind direction indicator.

Location

5.1.1.2 A wind direction indicator shall be located so as to be visible from aircraft in flight or on the movement area and in such a way as to be free from the effects of air disturbances caused by nearby objects.

Characteristics

5.1.1.3 The wind direction indicator should be in the form of a truncated cone made of fabric and should have a length of not less than 3.6 m and a diameter, at the larger end, of not less than 0.9 m. It should be constructed so that it gives a clear indication of the direction of the surface wind and a general indication of the wind speed. The colour or colours should be so selected as to make the wind direction indicator clearly visible and understandable from a height of at least 300 m, having regard to background. Where practicable, a single colour, preferably white or orange, should be used. Where a combination of two colours is required to give adequate conspicuity against changing backgrounds, they should preferably be orange and white, red and white, or black and white, and should be arranged in five alternate bands, the first and last bands being the darker colour.

5.1.1.4 The location of at least one wind direction indicator should be marked by a circular band 15 m in diameter and 1.2 m wide. The band should be centred about the wind direction indicator support and should be in a colour chosen to give adequate conspicuity, preferably white.

5.1.1.5 Provision should be made for illuminating at least one wind indicator at an aerodrome intended for use at night.

5.1.2 Landing direction indicator

Location

5.1.2.1 Where provided, a landing direction indicator shall be located in a conspicuous place on the aerodrome.

Characteristics

5.1.2.2 The landing direction indicator should be in the form of a "T".

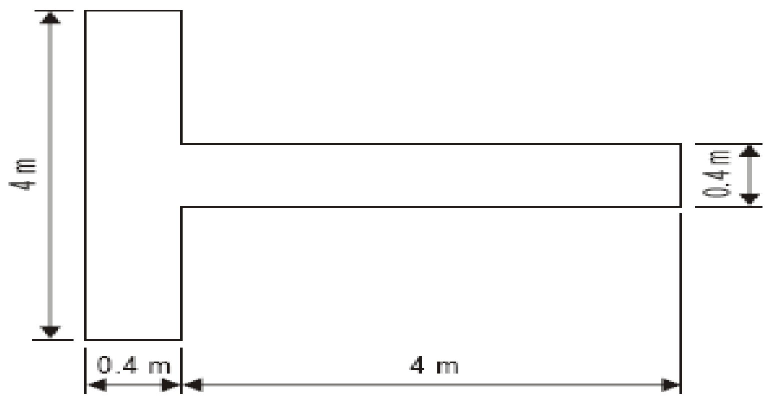


Figure 5-1. Landing direction indicator

5.1.2.3 The shape and minimum dimensions of a landing "T" shall be as shown in Figure 5 -1. The colour of the landing "T" shall be either white or orange, the choice being dependent on the colour that contrasts best with the background against which the indicator will be viewed. Where required for use at night the landing "T" shall either be illuminated or outlined by white lights.

5.1.3 Signaling lamp

Application

5.1.3.1 A signaling lamp shall be provided at a controlled aerodrome in the aerodrome control tower.

Characteristics

5.1.3.2 A signaling lamp should be capable of producing red, green and white signals, and of:

a) being aimed manually at any target as required;

b) giving a signal in any one colour followed by a signal in either of the two other colours; and

c) transmitting a message in any one of the three colours by Morse Code up to a speed of at least four words per minute. When selecting the green light, use should be made of the restricted boundary of green as specified in Appendix 1, 2.1.2

5.1.3.3 The beam spread should be not less than 1° nor greater than 3°, with negligible light beyond 3°. When the signalling lamp is intended for use in the daytime the intensity of the coloured light should be not less than 6 000 cd.

5.1.4 Signal panels and signal area

Note— The inclusion of detailed specifications for a signal area in this section is not intended to imply that one has to be provided. Attachment A, Section 17, provides guidance on the need to provide ground signals. Annex 2, Appendix 1, specifies the shape, colour and use of visual ground signals. The Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4, provides guidance on their design.

Location of signal area

5.1.4.1 The signal area should be located so as to be visible for all angles of azimuth above an angle of 10° above the horizontal when viewed from a height of 300 m.

Characteristics of signal area

5.1.4.2 The signal area shall be an even horizontal surface at least 9 m square.

5.1.4.3 Thecolour of the signal area should be chosen to contrast with the colours of the signal panels used, and it should be surrounded by a white border not less than 0.3 m wide.

5.2 Markings

5.2.1 General

Interruption of runway markings

5.2.1.1 At an intersection of two (or more) runways the markings of the more important runway, except for the runway side stripe marking, shall be displayed and the markings of the other runway(s) shall be interrupted. The runway side stripe marking of the more important runway may be either continued across the intersection or interrupted.

5.2.1.2 The order of importance of runways for the display of runway markings should be as follows:

1st — precision approach runway;

2nd—non-precision approach runway; and

3rd — non-instrument runway

5.2.1.3 At an intersection of a runway and taxiway the markings of the runway shall be displayed and the markings of the taxiway interrupted, except that runway side stripe markings may be interrupted.

Note— See 5.2.8.7 regarding the manner of connecting runway and taxiway centre line markings.

Colour and conspicuity

5.2.1.4 Runway markings shall be white.

Note 1— It has been found that, on runway surfaces of light colour, the conspicuity of white markings can be improved by outlining them in black.

Note 2— It is preferable that the risk of uneven friction characteristics on markings be reduced in so far as practicable by the use of a suitable kind of paint.

Note 3— Markings may consist of solid areas or a series of longitudinal stripes providing an effect equivalent to the solid areas.

5.2.1.5 Taxiway markings, runway turn pad markings and aircraft stand markings shall be yellow.

5.2.1.6 Apron safety lines shall be of a conspicuous colour which shall contrast with that used for aircraft stand markings.

5.2.1.7 At aerodromes where operations take place at night, pavement markings should be made with reflective materials designed to enhance the visibility of the markings.

Note— Guidance on reflective materials is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

Unpaved taxiways

5.2.1.8 An unpaved taxiway should be provided, so far as practicable, with the markings prescribed for paved taxiways.

5.2.2 Runway designation marking

Application

5.2.2.1 A runway designation marking shall be provided at the thresholds of a paved runway.

5.2.2.2 A runway designation marking should be provided, so far as practicable, at the thresholds of an unpaved runway.

Location

5.2.2.3 A runway designation marking shall be located at a threshold as shown in Figure 5-2 as appropriate.

Note— If the runway threshold is displaced from the extremity of the runway, a sign showing the designation of the runway may be provided for aeroplanes taking off.

Characteristics

5.2.2.4 A runway designation marking shall consist of a two-digit number and on parallel runways shall be supplemented with a letter. On a single runway, dual parallel runways and triple parallel runways the two-digit number shall be the whole number nearest the one-tenth of the magnetic North when viewed from the direction of approach. On four or more parallel runways, one set of adjacent runways shall be numbered to the nearest one-tenth magnetic azimuth and the other set of adjacent runways numbered to the next nearest one-tenth of the magnetic azimuth. When the above rule would give a single digit number, it shall be preceded by a zero.

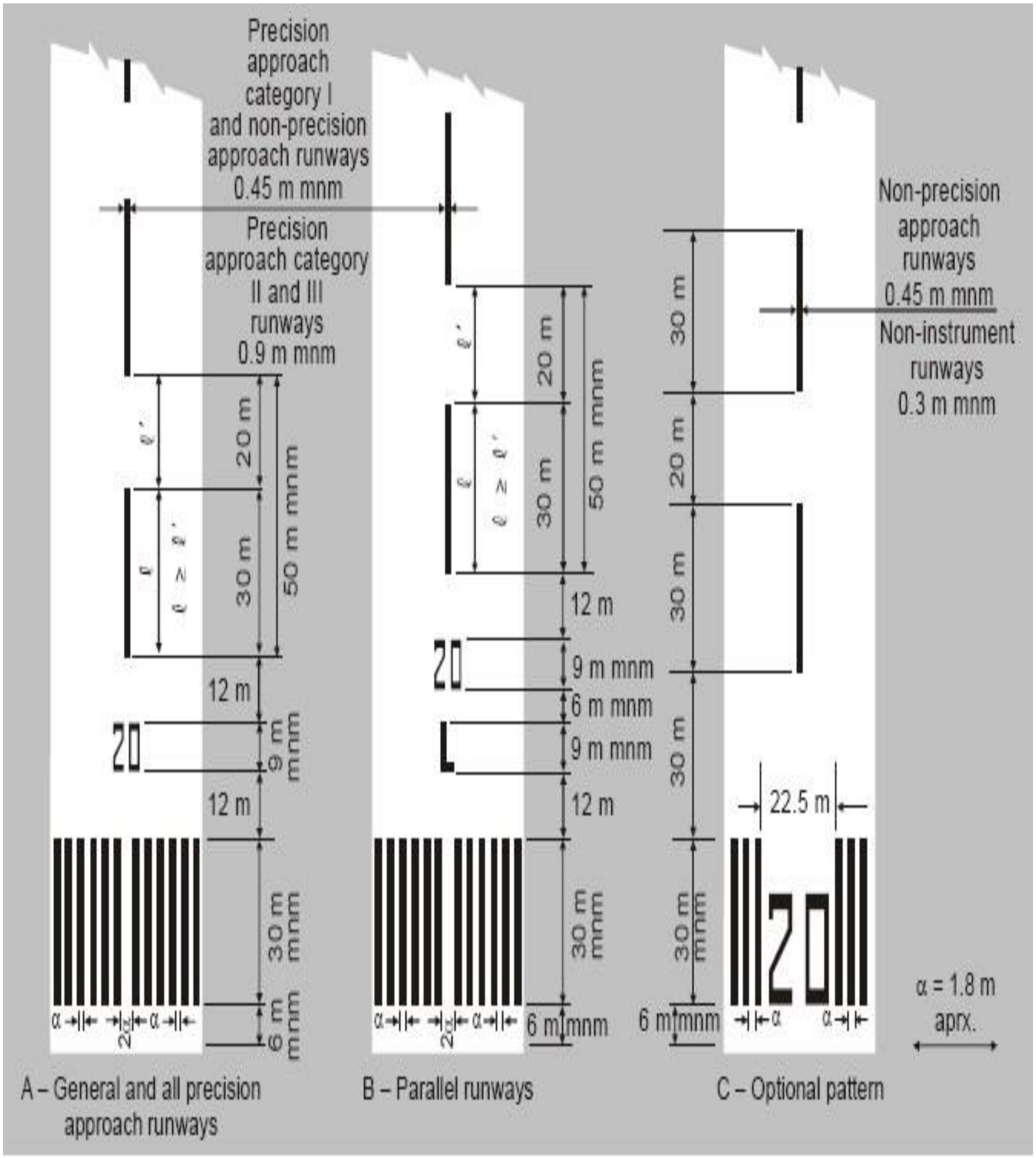


Figure 5-2. Runway designation, centre line and threshold markings

5.2.2.5 In the case of parallel runways, each runway designation number shall be supplemented by a letter as follows, in the order shown from left to right when viewed from the direction of approach:

— for two parallel runways: “L” “R”;

— for three parallel runways: “L” “C” “R”;

— for four parallel runways: “L” “R” “L” “R”;

— for five parallel runways: “L” “C” “R” “L” “R” or “L” “R” “L” “C” “R”; and — for six

parallel runways:

“L” “C” “R” “L” “C” “R”.

5.2.2.6 The numbers and letters shall be in the form and proportion shown in Figure 5-3. The dimensions shall be not less than those shown in Figure 5-3, but where the numbers are incorporated in the threshold marking, larger dimensions shall be used in order to fill adequately the gap between the stripes of the threshold marking.

5.2.3 Runway centre line marking Application

5.2.3.1 A runway centre line marking shall be provided on a paved runway.

Location

5.2.3.2 A runway centre line marking shall be located along the centre line of the runway between the runway designation markings as shown in Figure 5-2, except when interrupted in compliance with 5.2.1.1.

Characteristics

5.2.3.3 A runway centre line marking shall consist of a line of uniformly spaced stripes and gaps. The length of a stripe plus a gap shall be not less than 50 m or more than 75 m. The length of each stripe shall be at least equal to the length of the gap or 30 m, whichever is greater.

5.2.3.4 The width of the stripes shall be not less than:

— 0.90 m on precision approach category II and III runways;

— 0.45 m on non-precision approach runways where the code number is 3 or 4, and precision approach category I runways; and

— 0.30 m on non-precision approach runways where the code number is 1 or 2, and on non- instrument runways.

5.2.4 Threshold marking

Application

5.2.4.1 A threshold marking shall be provided at the threshold of a paved instrument runway, and of a paved non-instrument runway where the code number is 3 or 4 and the runway is intended for use by international commercial air transport.

5.2.4.2 A threshold marking should be provided at the threshold of a paved non-instrument runway where the code number is 3 or 4 and the runway is intended for use by other than international commercial air transport.

5.2.4.3 A threshold marking should be provided, so far as practicable, at the thresholds of an unpaved runway.

Note.— The Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4, shows a form of marking which has been found satisfactory for the marking of downward slopes immediately before the threshold.

Location

5.2.4.4 The stripes of the threshold marking shall commence 6 m from the threshold.

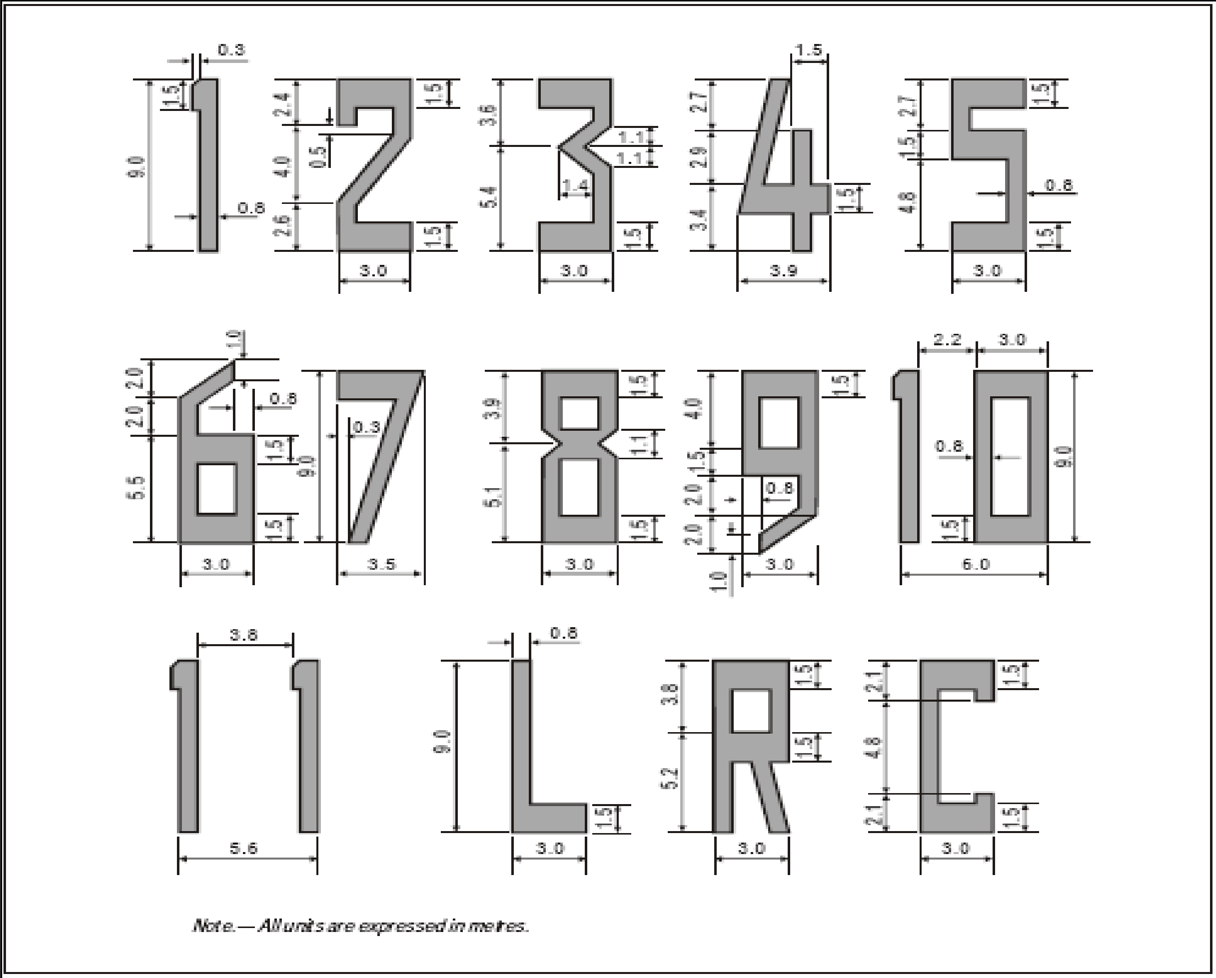


Figure 5-3. Form and proportions of numbers and letters for runway designation markings

Characteristics

5.2.4.5 A runway threshold marking shall consist of a pattern of longitudinal stripes of uniform dimensions disposed symmetrically about the centre line of a runway as shown in Figure 5-2 (A) and (B) for a runway width of 45 m. The number of stripes shall be in accordance with the runway width as follows:

Runway width	Number of stripes
18 m	14
23 m	16
30 m	18
45 m	12
60 m	16

except that on non-precision approach and non-instrument runways 45 m or greater in width, they may be as shown in Figure 5-2 (C).

5.2.4.6 The stripes shall extend laterally to within 3 m of the edge of a runway or to a distance of 27 m on either side of a runway centre line, whichever results in the smaller lateral distance. Where a runway designation marking is placed within a threshold marking there shall be a minimum of three stripes on each side of the centre line of the runway.Where a runway designation marking is placed above a threshold marking, the stripes shall be continued across the runway. The stripes shall be at least 30 m long and approximately 1.80 m wide with spacings of approximately 1.80 m between them except that, where the stripes are continued across a runway, a double spacing shall be used to separate the two stripes nearest the centreline of the runway, and in the case where the designation marking is included within the threshold marking this spacing shall be 22.5 m.

Transverse stripe

5.2.4.7 Where a threshold is displaced from the extremity of a runway or where the extremity of a runway is not square with the runway centre line, a transverse stripe as shown in Figure 5-4 (B) should be added to the threshold marking.

5.2.4.8 A transverse stripe shall be not less than 1.80 m wide.

Arrows

5.2.4.9 Where a runway threshold is permanently displaced, arrows conforming to Figure 5-4 (B) shall be provided on the portion of the runway before the displaced threshold.

5.2.4.10 When a runway threshold is temporarily displaced from the normal position, it shall be marked as shown in Figure 5-4 (A) or 5-4 (B) and all markings prior to the displaced threshold shall be obscured except the runway centre line marking, which shall be converted to arrows.

Note 1.— In the case where a threshold is temporarily displaced for only a short period of time, it has been found satisfactory to use markers in the form and colour of a displaced threshold marking rather than attempting to paint this marking on the runway.

Note 2.— When the runway before a displaced threshold is unfit for the surface movement of aircraft, closed markings, as described in 7.1.4, are required to be provided.

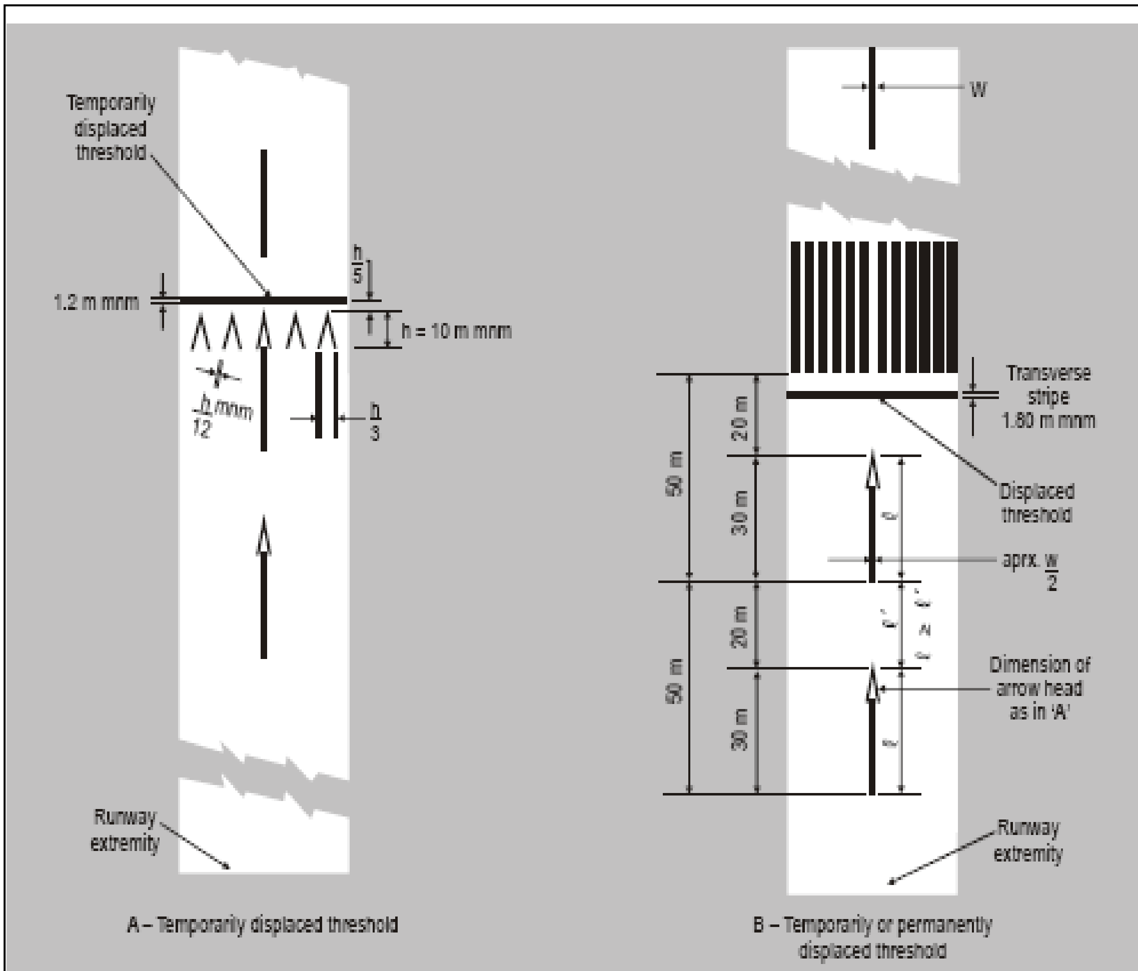


Figure 5-4. Displaced threshold markings

5.2.5 Aiming point marking

Application

5.2.5.1 An aiming point marking shall be provided at each approach end of a paved instrument runway where the code number is 2, 3 or 4.

5.2.5.2 An aiming point marking should be provided at each approach end of:

a) a paved non-instrument runway where the code number is 3 or 4;

b) a paved instrument runway where the code number is 1;

when additional conspicuity of the aiming point is desirable.

Location

5.2.5.3 The aiming point marking shall commence no closer to the threshold than the distance indicated in the appropriate column of Table 5-1, except that, on a runway equipped with a visual approach slope indicator system, the beginning of the marking shall be coincident with the visual approach slope origin.

5.2.5.4 An aiming point marking shall consist of two conspicuous stripes. The dimensions of the stripes and the lateral spacing between their inner sides shall be in accordance with the provisions of the appropriate columnofTable5-1.Wherea touchdown zone marking is provided, the lateral spacing between the markings shall be the same as that of the touchdown zone marking.

5.2.6 Touchdown zone marking

Application

5.2.6.1 A touchdown zone marking shall be provided in the touchdown zone of a paved precision approach runway where the code number is 2, 3 or 4.

5.2.6.2 A touchdown zone marking should be provided in the touchdown zone of a paved non precision approach or non-instrument runway where the code number is 3 or 4 and additional conspicuity of the touchdown zone isdesirable.

Table 5-1. Location and dimensions of aiming point marking

Location and dimensions	Landing distance available			
	Less than 800 meters	**800 m up to but not including 1200 m**	**1200 m up to but not including 2400 m**	**2400 m or more**
Distance from threshold to beginning of marking	150 m	250 m	300 m	400 m
Length of stripe [a]	30 – 45 m	30 – 45 m	45 – 60 m	45 – 60 m
Width of stripe	4 m	6 m	6 – 10 m [b]	6 – 10 m [b]
Lateral spacing between inner sides of stripes	6m [C]	9m [C]	18 – 22.5 m	18 – 22.5 m

a The greater dimensions of the specific ranges are to be used when increased conspicuity is required.

b The lateral spacing may be varied within these limits to minimize the contamination by rubber deposits.

c These figures are deduced in reference to the outer main gear span.

Location and characteristics

5.2.6.3 A touchdown zone marking shall consist of pairs of rectangular markings symmetrically disposed about the runway centre line with the number of such pairs related to the landing distance available and, where the marking is to be displayed at both the approach directions of a runway, the distance between the thresholds, as follows:

Landing distance available or distance between thresholds	Pairs of markings
Less than 900 m	1
900 m up to but not including 1200m	2
1200 m up to but not including 1500 m	3
1500 m up to but not including 2400 m	4
2400 m or more	6

5.2.6.4 A touchdown zone marking shall conform to either of the two patterns shown in Figure 5- 5. For the pattern shown in Figure 5-5 (A), the markings shall be not less than 22.5 m long and 3 m wide. For the pattern shown in Figure 5-5 (B), each stripe of each marking shall be not less than 22.5 m long and 1.8 m wide with a spacing of 1.5 m between adjacent stripes. The lateral spacing between the inner sides of the rectangles shall be equal to that of the aiming point marking where provided. Where an aiming point marking is not provided, the lateral spacing between the inner sides of the rectangles shall correspond to the lateral spacing specified for the aiming point markinginTable5-1(columns2,3,4or5,as appropriate). The pairs of markings shall be provided at longitudinal spacings of 150m beginning from the threshold, except that pairs of touchdown zone markings coincident with or located within 50m of an aiming point markings hall be deleted from the pattern.

5.2.6.5 On a non-precision approach runway where the code number is 2, an additional pair of touchdown zone marking stripes should be provided 150 m beyond the beginning of the aiming point marking.

5.2.7 Runway side stripe marking Application

5.2.7.1 A runway side stripe marking shall be provided between the thresholds of a paved runway where there is a lack of contrast between the runway edges and the shoulders or the surrounding terrain.

5.2.7.2 A runway side stripe marking should be provided on a precision approach runway irrespective of the contrast between the runway edges and the shoulders or the surrounding terrain.

Location

5.2.7.3 A runway side stripe marking should consist of two stripes, one placed along each edge of the runway with the outer edge of each stripe approximately on the edge of the runway, except that,

where the runway is greater than 60 m in width, the stripes should be located 30 m from the runway centre line.

5.2.7.4 Where a runway turn pad is provided, the runway side stripe marking should be continued between the runway and the runway turn pad.

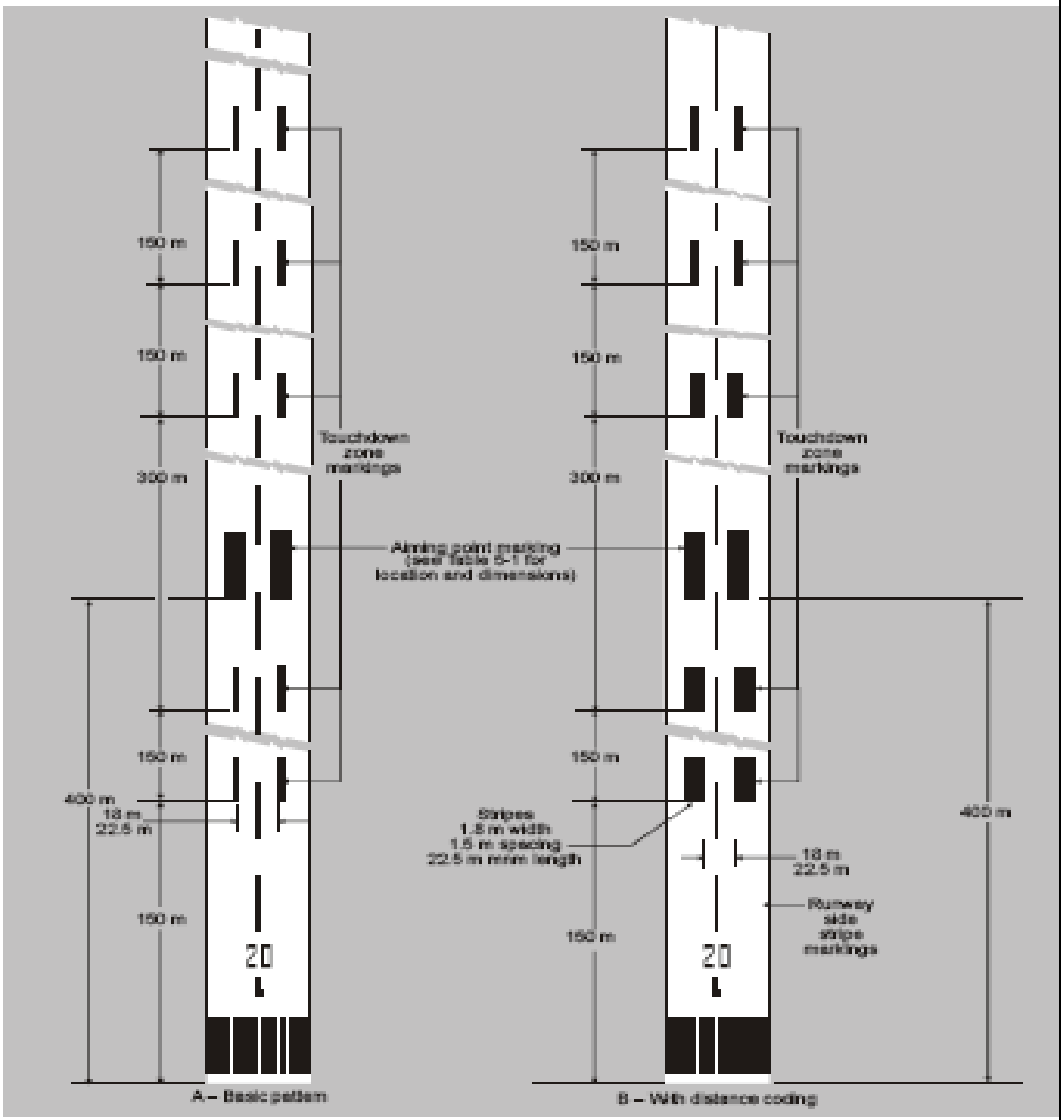


Figure 5-5. Aiming point and touchdown zone marking: (illustrated for a runway with a length of 2 400 m or more)

Characteristics

5.2.7.5 A runway side stripe should have an overall width of at least 0.9 m on runways 30 m or more in width and at least 0.45 m on narrower runways.

5.2.8 Taxiway centre line marking

Application

5.2.8.1 Taxiway centre line marking shall be provided on a paved taxiway, de-icing/anti-icing facility and apron where the code number is 3 or 4 in such a way as to provide continuous guidance between the runway centre line and aircraft stands.

5.2.8.2 Taxiway centre line marking should be provided on a paved taxiway, de-icing/anti-icing facility and apron where the code number is 1 or 2 in such a way as to provide continuous guidance between the runway centre line and aircraft stands.

5.2.8.3 Taxiwaycentre line marking shall be provided on a paved runway when the runway is part of a standard taxiroute and:

a) there is no runway centre line marking; or

b) where the taxiway centre line is not coincident with the runway centre line.

5.2.8.4 Where it is necessary to denote the proximity of a runway-holding position, enhanced taxiway centre line marking should be provided.

Note.—The provision of enhanced taxiway centre line marking may form part of runway incursion prevention measures.

5.2.8.5 Where provided, enhanced taxiway centre line marking shall be installed at each taxiway/runway intersection.

Location

5.2.8.6 On a straight section of a taxiway the taxiway centre line marking should be located along the taxiway centre line. On a taxiway curve the marking should continue from the straight portion of the taxiway at a constant distance from the outside edge of the curve.

Note.— See 3.9.5 and Figure 3-2.

5.2.8.7 At an intersection of a taxiway with a runway where the taxiway serves as anexitfromthe runway, the taxiway centre line marking should be curved into the runway centre line marking asshowninFigures5-6 and 5-26. The taxiway centre line marking should be extended parallel to the runway centerline marking for a distance of at least 60 m beyond the point of tangency where the code number is 3 or 4,and for a distance of atleast30m where the code number is 1 or 2.

5.2.8.8 Where taxiway centre line marking is provided on a runway in accordance with 5.2.8.3, the marking should be located on the centre line of the designated taxiway.

5.2.8.7 Where provided:

a) An enhanced taxiway centre line marking shall extend from the runway-holding position Pattern A (as defined in Figure 5-6, Taxiway markings) to a distance of up to 47 m in the direction of travel away from the runway. See Figure 5-7 (a).

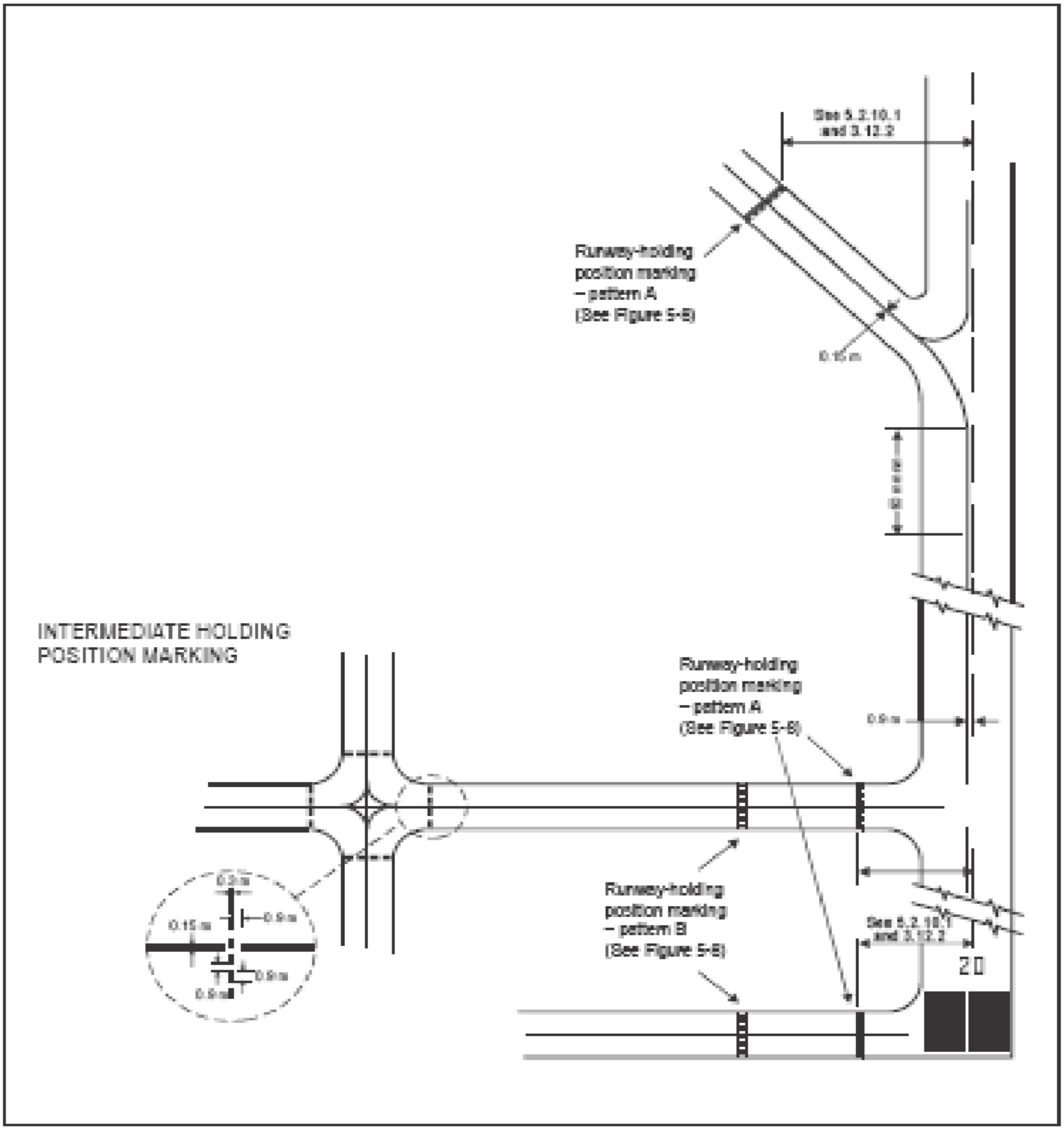


Figure 5-6. Taxiway markings
(shown with basic runway markings)

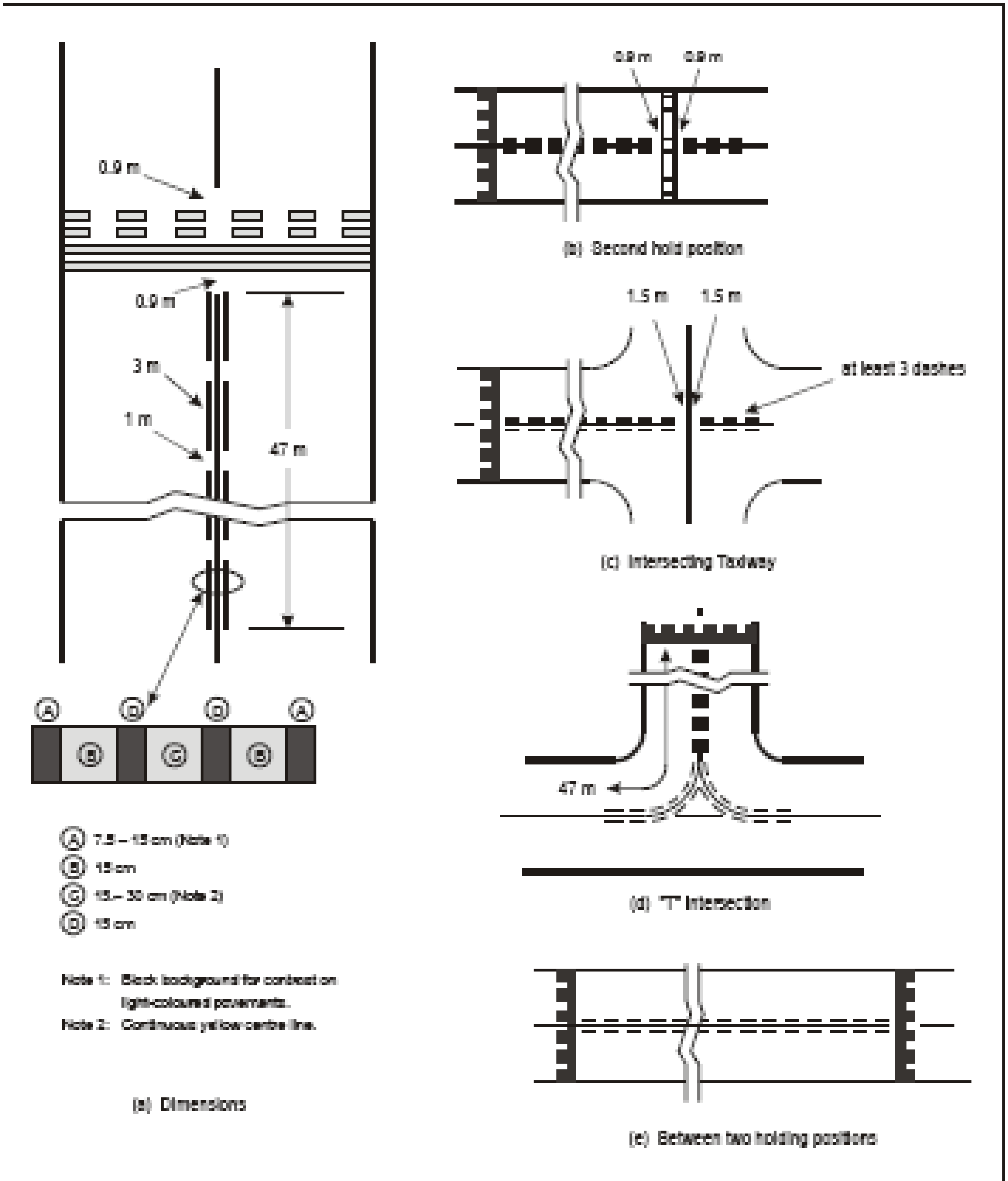


Figure 5-7. Enhanced taxiway centre line marking

b) If the enhanced taxiway centre line marking intersects another runway-holding position marking, such as for a precision approach category II or III runway, that is located within 47 m of the first runway-holding position marking, the enhanced taxiway centre line marking shall be interrupted 0.9 m prior to and after the intersected runway-holding position marking. The enhanced taxiway centre line marking shall continue beyond the intersected runway-holding position marking for at least three dashed line segments or 47 m from start to finish, whichever is greater. See Figure 5-7 (b).

c) If the enhanced taxiway centre line marking continues through a taxiway/taxiway intersection that is located within 47 m of the runway-holding position marking, the enhanced taxiway centre line marking shall be interrupted 1.5 m prior to and after the point where the intersected taxiway centre line crosses the enhanced taxiway centre line. The enhanced taxiway centre line marking shall continue beyond the taxiway/taxiway intersection for at least three dashed line segments or 47 m from start to finish, whichever is greater. See Figure 5-7 (c).

d) Where two taxiway centre lines converge at or before the runway-holding position marking, the inner dashed line shall not be less than 3 m in length. See Figure 5-7 (d).

e) Where there are two opposing runway-holding position markings and the distance between the markings is less than 94 m, the enhanced taxiway centre line markings shall extend over this entire distance. The enhanced taxiway centre line markings shall not extend beyond either runway-holding position marking. See Figure 5-7 (e).

Characteristics

5.2.8.10 A taxiway centre line marking shall be at least 15 cm in width and continuous in length except where it intersects with a runway-holding position marking or an intermediate holding position marking as shown in Figure 5-6.

5.2.8.11 Enhanced taxiway centre line marking shall be as shown in Figure 5-7.

5.2.9 Runway turn pad marking

Application

5.2.9.1 Where a runway turn pad is provided, a runway turn pad marking shall be provided for continuous guidance to enable an aeroplane to complete a 180-degree turn
and align with the runway centre line.

Location

5.2.9.2 The runway turn pad marking should be curved from the runway centre line into the turn pad. The radius of the curve should be compatible with the manoeuvring capability and normal taxiing speeds of the aeroplanes for which the runway turn pad is intended. The intersection angle of the runway turn pad marking with the runway centre line should not be greater than 30 degrees.

5.2.9.3 The runway turn pad marking should be extended parallel to the runway centre line marking for a distance of at least 60 m beyond the point of tangency where the code number is 3 or 4, and for a distance of at least 30 m where the code number is 1 or 2.

5.2.9.4 A runway turn pad marking should guide the aeroplane in such a way as to allow a straight portion of taxiing before the point where a 180-degree turn is to be made. The straight portion of the runway turn pad marking should be parallel to the outer edge of the runway turn pad.

5.2.9.5 The design of the curve allowing the aeroplane to negotiate a 180-degree turn should be based on a nose wheel steering angle not exceeding 45 degrees.

5.2.9.6 The design of the turn pad marking should be such that, when the cockpit of the aeroplane remains over the runway turn pad marking, the clearance distance between any wheel of the aeroplane landing gear and the edge of the runway turn pad should be not less than those specified in 3.3.6.

Note— For ease of manoeuvring, consideration may be given to providing a larger wheel-to-edge clearance for codes E and F aeroplanes. See 3.3.7.

Characteristics

5.2.9.7 A runway turn pad marking shall be at least 15 cm in width and continuous in length.

5.2.10 Runway-holding position marking

Application and location

5.2.10.1 A runway-holding position marking shall be displayed along a runway-holding position.

Note.— See 5.4.2 concerning the provision of signs at runway-holding positions.

Characteristics

5.2.10.2 At an intersection of a taxiway and a non-instrument, non-precision approach or take-off runway, the runway holding position marking shall be as shown in Figure 5-6, pattern A.

5.2.10.3 Where a single runway-holding position is provided at an intersection of a taxiway and a precision approach category I, II or III runway, the runway-holding position marking shall be as shown in Figure 5-6, pattern A. Where two or three runway-holding positions are provided at such an intersection, the runway-holding position marking closer (closest) to the runway shall be as shown in Figure 5-6, pattern A and the markings farther from the runway shall be as shown in Figure 5-6, pattern B.

5.2.10.4 The runway-holding position marking displayed at a runway-holding position established in accordance with 3.12.3 shall be as shown in Figure 5-6, pattern A.

5.2.10.5 Until 26 November 2026, the dimensions of runway-holding position markings shall be as shown in Figure 5-8, pattern A1 (or A2) or pattern B1 (or B2), as appropriate.

5.2.10.6 As of 26 November 2026, the dimensions of runway-holding position markings shall be as shown in Figure 5-8, pattern A2 or pattern B2, as appropriate.

5.2.10.7 Where increased conspicuity of the runway-holding position is required, the dimensions of runway-holding position marking should be as shown in Figure 5-8, pattern A2 or pattern B2, as appropriate.

Note— An increased conspicuity of the runway-holding position can be required, notably to avoid incursion risks.

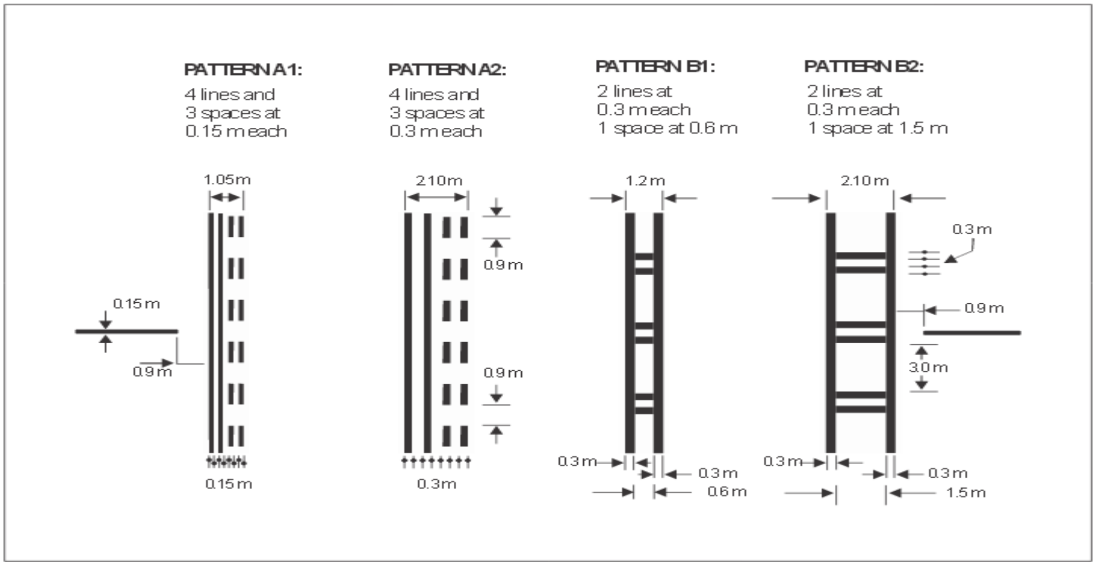


Figure 5-8. Runway-holding position markings

Note.— Patterns A1 and B1 are no longer valid after 2026.

5.2.10.8 Where a pattern B runway-holding position marking is located on an area where it would exceed 60 m in length, the term “CAT II” or “CAT III” as appropriate should be marked on the surface at the ends of the runway-holding position marking and at equal intervals of 45 m maximum between successive marks. The letters should be not less than 1.8 m high and should be placed not more than 0.9 m beyond the holding position marking.

5.2.10.9 The runway-holding position marking displayed at a runway/runway intersection shall be perpendicular to the centre line of the runway forming part of the standard taxi-route. The pattern of the marking shall be as shown in Figure5-8, pattern A2.

5.2.11 Intermediate holding position marking

Application and location

5.2.11.1 An intermediate holding position marking should be displayed along an intermediate holding position.

5.2.11.2 An intermediate holding position marking should be displayed at the exit boundary of a remote de-icing/anti-icing facility adjoining a taxiway.

5.2.11.3 Where an intermediate holding position marking is displayed at an intersection of two paved taxiways, it shall be located across the taxiway at sufficient distance from the near edge of the intersecting taxiway to ensure safe clearance between taxiing aircraft. It shall be coincident with a stop bar or intermediate holding position lights, where provided.

5.2.11.4 The distance between an intermediate holding position marking at the exit boundary of a remote de-icing/ anti-icing facility and the centre line of the adjoining taxiway shall not be less than the dimension specified in Table 3-1,column 11.

Characteristics

5.2.11.5 An intermediate holding position marking shall consist of a single broken line as shown in Figure 5-6.

5.2.12 VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking Application

5.2.12.1 When a VOR aerodrome checkpoint is established, it shall be indicated by a VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking and sign.

Note.— See 5.4.4 for VOR aerodrome checkpoint sign.

5.2.12.2 Site selection

Note.—Guidance on the selection of sites for VOR aerodrome checkpoints is given in Annex 10, Volume I, Attachment E.

Location

5.2.12.3 A VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking shall be centred on the spot at which an aircraft is to be parked to receive the correct VOR signal.

Characteristics

5.2.12.4 A VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking shall consist of a circle 6 m in diameter and have a line width of 15 cm (see Figure 5-9 (A)).

5.2.12.5 When it is preferable for an aircraft to be aligned in a specific direction, a line should be provided that passes through the centre of the circle on the desired azimuth. The line should extend 6 m outside the circle in the desired direction of heading and terminate in an arrowhead. The width of the line should be 15 cm (see Figure 5-9 (B)).

Note.— A direction line need only be provided when an aircraft must be aligned in a specific direction.

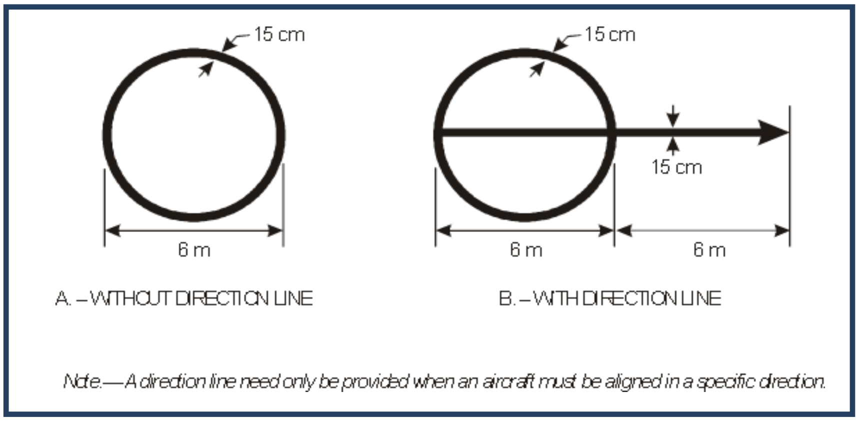


Figure 5-9. VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking

5.2.12.6 A VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking should preferably be white in colour but should differ from the colour used for the taxiway markings.

Note.—To provide contrast, markings may be bordered with black.

5.2.13 Aircraft stand marking

Note.—Guidance on the layout of aircraft stand markings is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

Application

5.2.13.1 Aircraft stand markings should be provided for designated parking positions on a paved apron and on a de-icing/anti-icing facility.

Location

5.2.13.2 Aircraft stand markings on a paved apron and on a de-icing/anti-icing facility should be located so as to provide the clearances specified in 3.13.6 and in 3.15.9, respectively, when the nose wheel follows the stand marking.

Characteristics

5.2.13.3 Aircraft stand markings should include such elements as stand identification, lead-in line, turn bar, turning line, alignment bar, stop line and lead-out line, as are required by the parking configuration and to complement other parking aids.

5.2.13.4 An aircraft stand identification (letter and/or number) should be included in the lead-in line a short distance after the beginning of the lead-in line. The height of the identification should be adequate to be readable from the cockpit of aircraft using the stand.

5.2.13.5 Where two sets of aircraft stand markings are superimposed on each other in order to permit more flexible use of the apron and it is difficult to identify which stand marking should be followed, or safety would be impaired if the wrong marking was followed, then identification of the aircraft for which each set of markings is intended should be added to the stand identification.

Note.— Example: 2A-B747, 2B-F28.

5.2.13.6 Lead-in, turning and lead-out lines should normally be continuous in length and have a width of not less than 15 cm. Where one or more sets of stand markings are superimposed on a stand marking, the lines should be continuous for the most demanding aircraft and broken for other aircraft.

5.2.13.7 The curved portions of lead-in, turning and lead-out lines should have radii appropriate to the most demanding aircraft type for which the markings are intended.

5.2.13.8 Where it is intended that an aircraft proceed in one direction only, arrows pointing in the direction to be followed should be added as part of the lead-in and lead-out lines.

5.2.13.9 A turn bar should be located at right angles to the lead-in line, abeam the left pilot position at the point of initiation of any intended turn. It should have a length and width of not less than 6 m and 15 cm, respectively, and include an arrowhead to indicate the direction of turn.

Note.—The distances to be maintained between the turn bar and the lead-in line may vary according to different aircraft types, taking into account the pilot's field of view.

5.2.13.10 If more than one turn bar and/or stop line is required, they should be coded.

5.2.13.11 An alignment bar should be placed so as to be coincident with the extended centre line of the aircraft in the specified parking position and visible to the pilot during the final part of the parking manoeuvre. It should have a width of not less than 15 cm.

5.2.13.12 A stop line should be located at right angles to the alignment bar, abeam the left pilot position at the intended point of stop. It should have a length and width of not less than 6 m and 15 cm, respectively.

Note.—The distances to be maintained between the stop line and the lead-in line may vary according to different aircraft types, taking into account the pilot's field of view.

5.2.14 Apron safety lines

Note.— Guidance on apron safety lines is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

Application

5.2.14.1 Apron safety lines should be provided on a paved apron as required by the parking configurations and ground facilities.

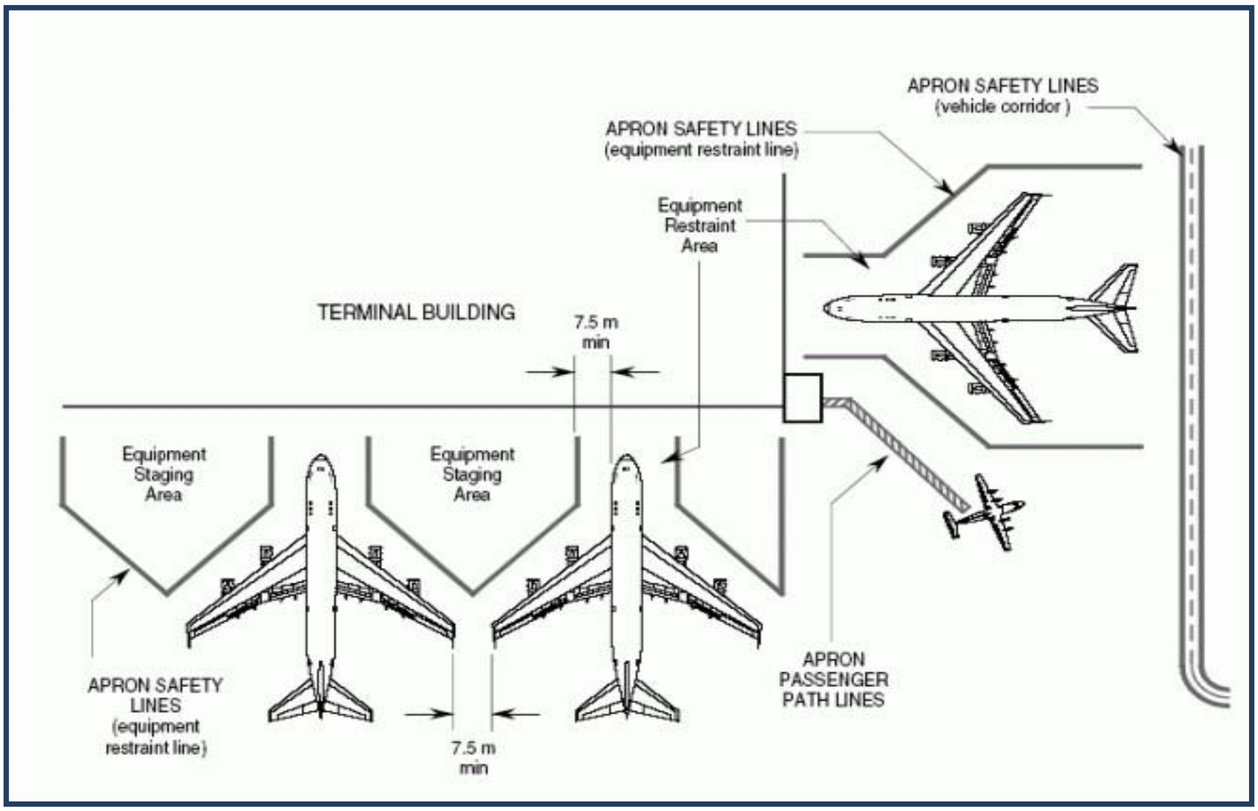
Location

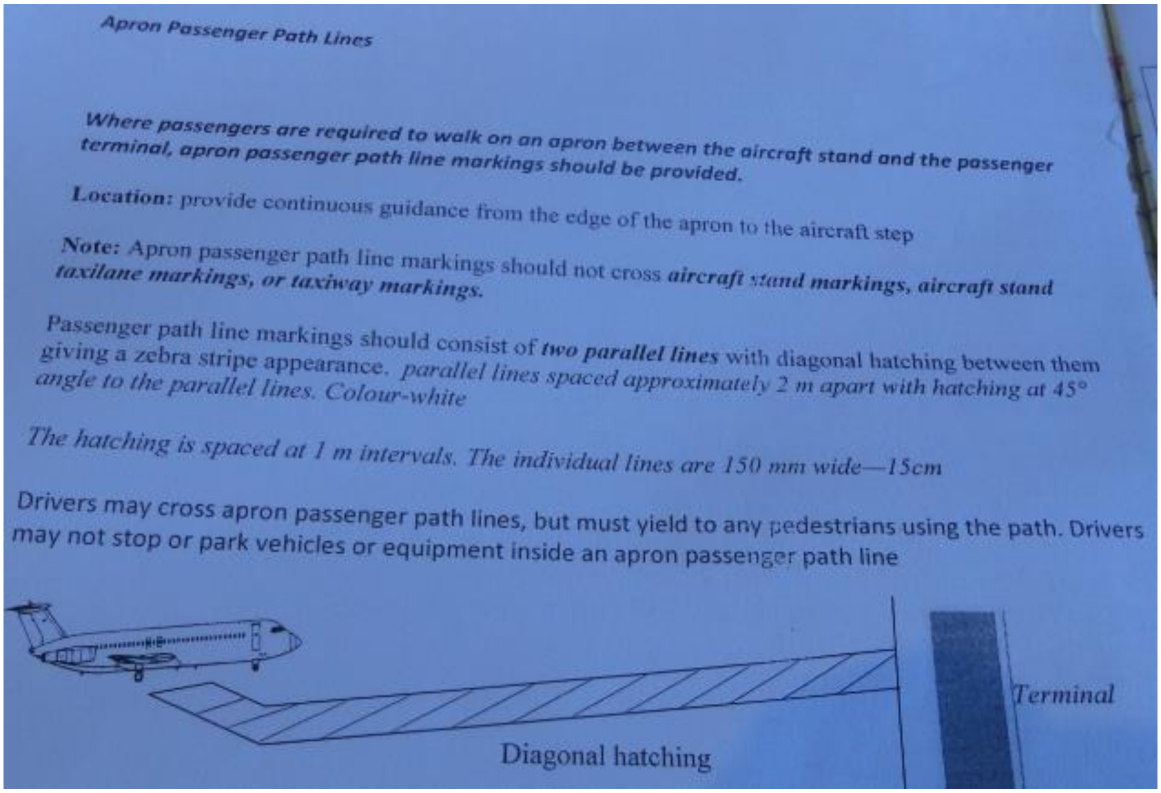
5.2.14.2 Apron safety lines shall be located so as to define the areas intended for use by ground vehicles and other aircraft servicing equipment, etc., to provide safe separation from aircraft.

Characteristics

5.2.14.3 Apron safety lines should include such elements as wing tip clearance lines and service road boundary lines as required by the parking configurations and ground facilities.

5.2.14.4 An apron safety line should be continuous in length and at least 15 cm in width.





Apron Passenger Path Lines

Where passengers are required to walk on an apron between the aircraft stand and the passenger terminal, apron passenger path line markings should be provided.

Location: provide continuous guidance from the edge of the apron to the aircraft step

Note: Apron passenger path line markings should not cross ***aircraft stand markings, aircraft stand taxilane markings, or taxiway markings.***

Passenger path line markings should consist of ***two parallel lines*** with diagonal hatching between them giving a zebra stripe appearance. *parallel lines spaced approximately 2 m apart with hatching at 45° angle to the parallel lines. Colour-white*

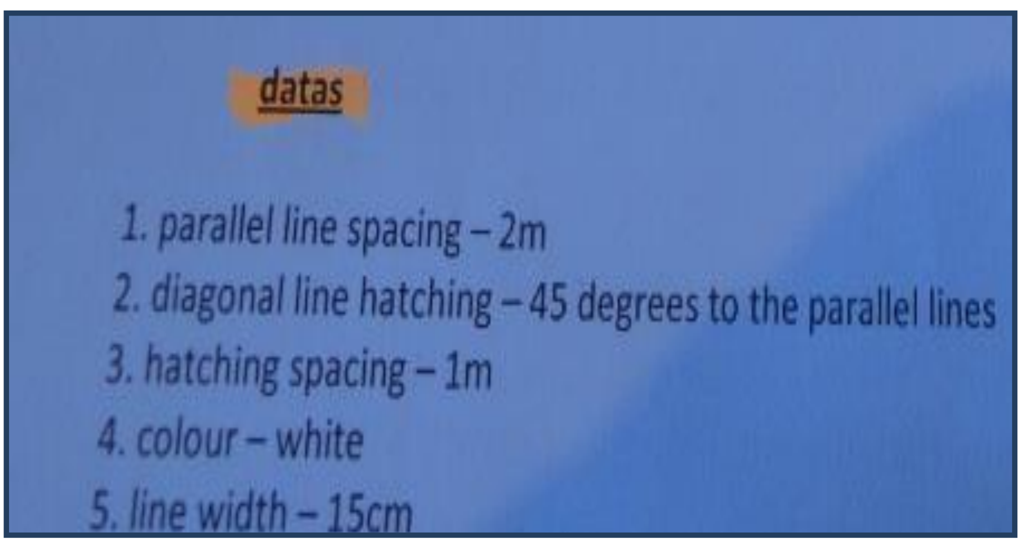
The hatching is spaced at 1 m intervals. The individual lines are 150 mm wide—15cm

Drivers may cross apron passenger path lines, but must yield to any pedestrians using the path. Drivers may not stop or park vehicles or equipment inside an apron passenger path line

Terminal

Diagonal hatching

Apron Passenger Path Lines



datas

1. parallel line spacing – 2m
2. diagonal line hatching – 45 degrees to the parallel lines
3. hatching spacing – 1m
4. colour – white
5. line width – 15cm

5.2.15 Road-holding position marking

Application

5.2.15.1 A road-holding position marking shall be provided at all road entrances to a runway.

Location

5.2.15.2 The road-holding position marking shall be located across the road at the holding position.

Characteristics

5.2.15.3 The road-holding position marking shall be in accordance with the local road traffic regulations.

5.2.16 Mandatory instructionmarking

Note.—Guidance on mandatory instruction marking is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

Application

5.2.16.1 Where it is impracticable to install a mandatory instruction sign in accordance with 5.4.2.1, a mandatory instruction marking shall be provided on the surface of the pavement.

5.2.16.2 Where operationally required, such as on taxiways exceeding 60 m in width, or to assist in the prevention of a runway incursion, a mandatory instruction sign should be supplemented by a mandatory instruction marking.

Location

5.2.16.3 The mandatory instruction marking on taxiways where the code letter is A, B, C or D shall be located across the taxiway equally placed about the taxiway centre line and on the holding side of the runway-holding position marking as shown in Figure 5-10 (A). The distance between the nearest edge of the marking and the runway-holding position marking or the taxiway centre line marking shall be not less than 1m.

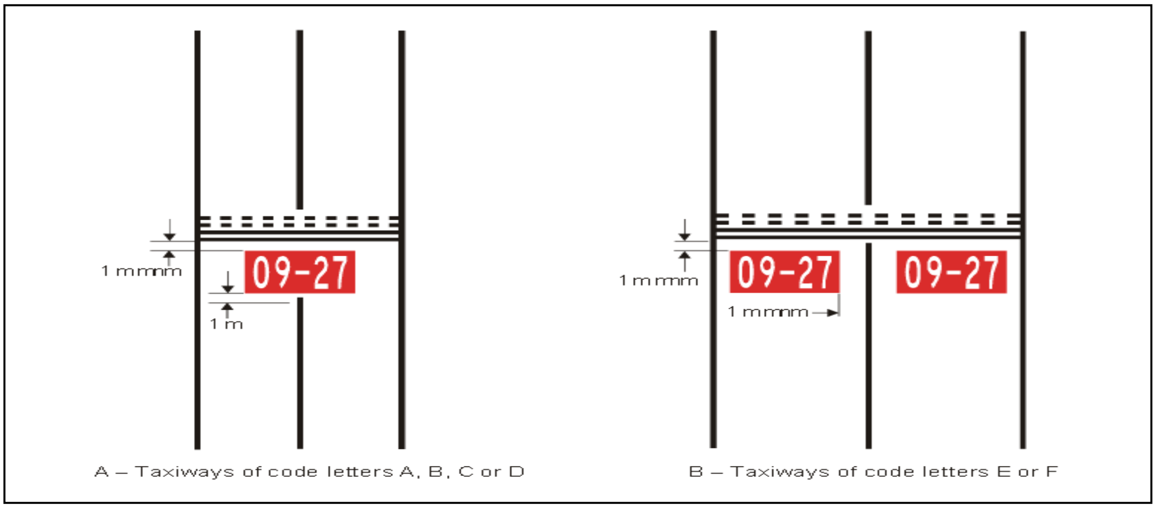


Figure 5-10. Mandatory instruction marking

5.2.16.4 The mandatory instruction marking on taxiways where the code letter is E or F shall be located on both sides of the taxiway centre line marking and on the holding side of the runway-holding position marking as shown in Figure 5-10 (B). The distance between the nearest edge of the marking and the runway-holding position marking or the taxiway centre line marking shall be not less than 1 m.

5.2.16.5 Except where operationally required, a mandatory instruction marking should not be located on a runway.

Characteristics

5.2.16.6 A mandatory instruction marking shall consist of an inscription in white on a red background. Except for a NO ENTRY marking, the inscription shall provide information identical to that of the associated mandatory instruction sign.

5.2.16.7 A NO ENTRY marking shall consist of an inscription in white reading NO ENTRY on a red background.

5.2.16.8 Where there is insufficient contrast between the marking and the pavement surface, the mandatory instruction marking shall include an appropriate border, preferably white or black.

5.2.16.9 The character height should be 4 m for inscriptions where the code letter is C, D, E or F, and 2 m where the code letter is A or B. The inscriptions should be in the form and proportions shown in Appendix 3.

5.2.16.3 The background should be rectangular and extend a minimum of 0.5 m laterally and vertically beyond the extremities of the inscription.

5.2.17 Information marking

Note.— Guidance on information marking is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

Application

5.2.17.1 Where an information sign would normally be installed and is impractical to install, as determined by the appropriate authority, an information marking shall be displayed on the surface of the pavement.

5.2.17.2 Where operationally required an information sign should be supplemented by an information marking.

5.2.17.3 An information (location/direction) marking should be displayed prior to and following complex taxiway intersections and where operational experience has indicated the addition of a taxiway location marking could assist flight crew ground navigation.

5.2.17.4 An information (location) marking should be displayed on the pavement surface at regular intervals along taxiways of great length.

Location

5.2.17.5 The information marking should be displayed across the surface of the taxiway or apron where necessary and positioned so as to be legible from the cockpit of an approaching aircraft.

Characteristics

5.2.17.6 An information marking shall consist of:

a) an inscription in yellow upon a black background, when it replaces or supplements a location sign; and

b) an inscription in black upon a yellow background, when it replaces or supplements a direction or destination sign.

5.2.17.7 Where there is insufficient contrast between the marking background and the pavement surface, the marking shall include:

a) a black border where the inscriptions are in black; and

b) a yellow border where the inscriptions are in yellow.

5.2.17.7 The character height should be 4 m. The inscriptions should be in the form and proportions shown in Appendix 3.

5.3 Lights

5.3.1 General

Lights which may endanger the safety of aircraft

5.3.1.1 A non-aeronautical ground light near an aerodrome which might endanger the safety of aircraft shall be extinguished, screened or otherwise modified so as to eliminate the source of danger.

Laser emissions which may endanger the safety of aircraft

5.3.1.2 To protect the safety of aircraft against the hazardous effects of laser emitters, the following protected zones should be established around aerodromes:

— a laser-beam free flight zone (LFFZ)
— a laser-beam critical flight zone (LCFZ)
— a laser-beam sensitive flight zone (LSFZ).

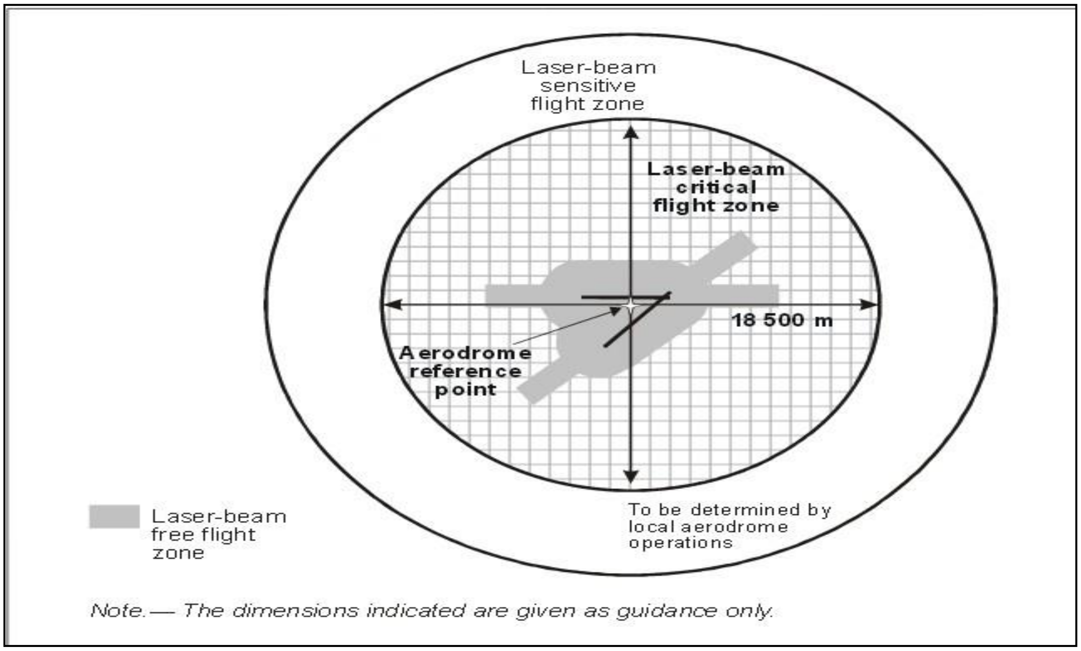
Note 1.— Figures 5-11, 5-12 and 5-13 may be used to determine the exposure levels and distances that adequately protect flight operations.

Note 2.— The restrictions on the use of laser beams in the three protected flight zones, LFFZ, LCFZ and LSFZ, refer to visible laser beams only. Laser emitters operated by the authorities in a manner compatible with flight safety are excluded. In all navigable airspace, the irradiance level of any laser beam, visible or invisible, is expected to be less than or equal to the maximum permissible exposure (MPE) unless such emission has been notified to the authority and permission obtained.

Note 3.— The protected flight zones are established in order to mitigate the risk of operating laser emitters in the vicinity of aerodromes.

Note 4— Further guidance on how to protect flight operations from the hazardous effects of laser emitters is contained in the Manual on Laser Emitters and Flight Safety (Doc 9815).

Note 5— See also Annex 11 — Air Traffic Services, Chapter 2.



Note—The dimensions indicated are given as guidance only.

Figure 5-11.Protected flight zones

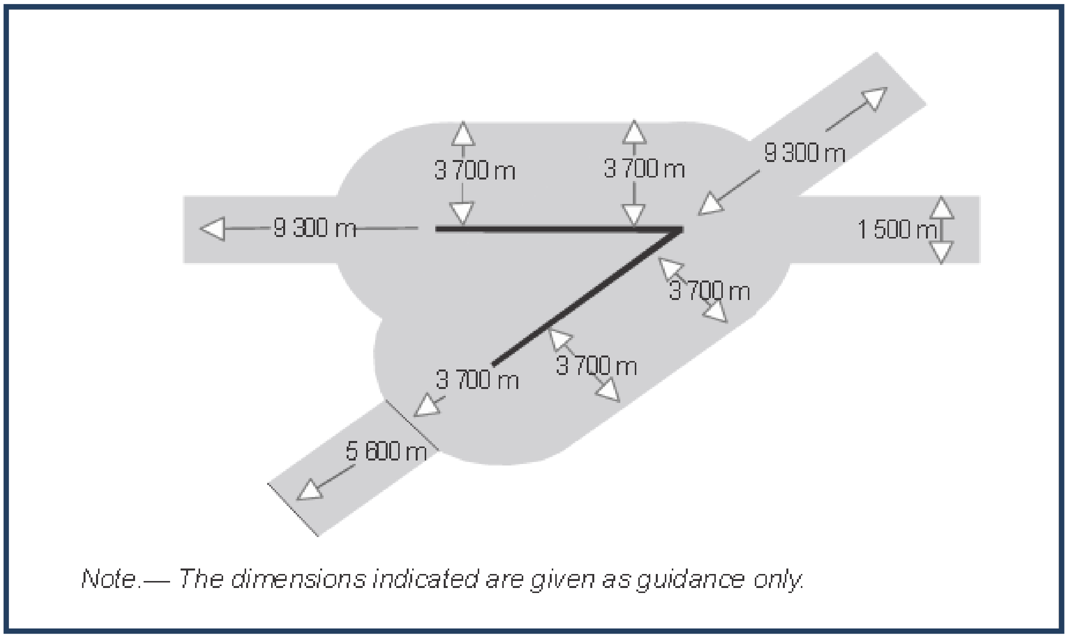


Figure 5-12. Multiple runway laser-beam free flight zone

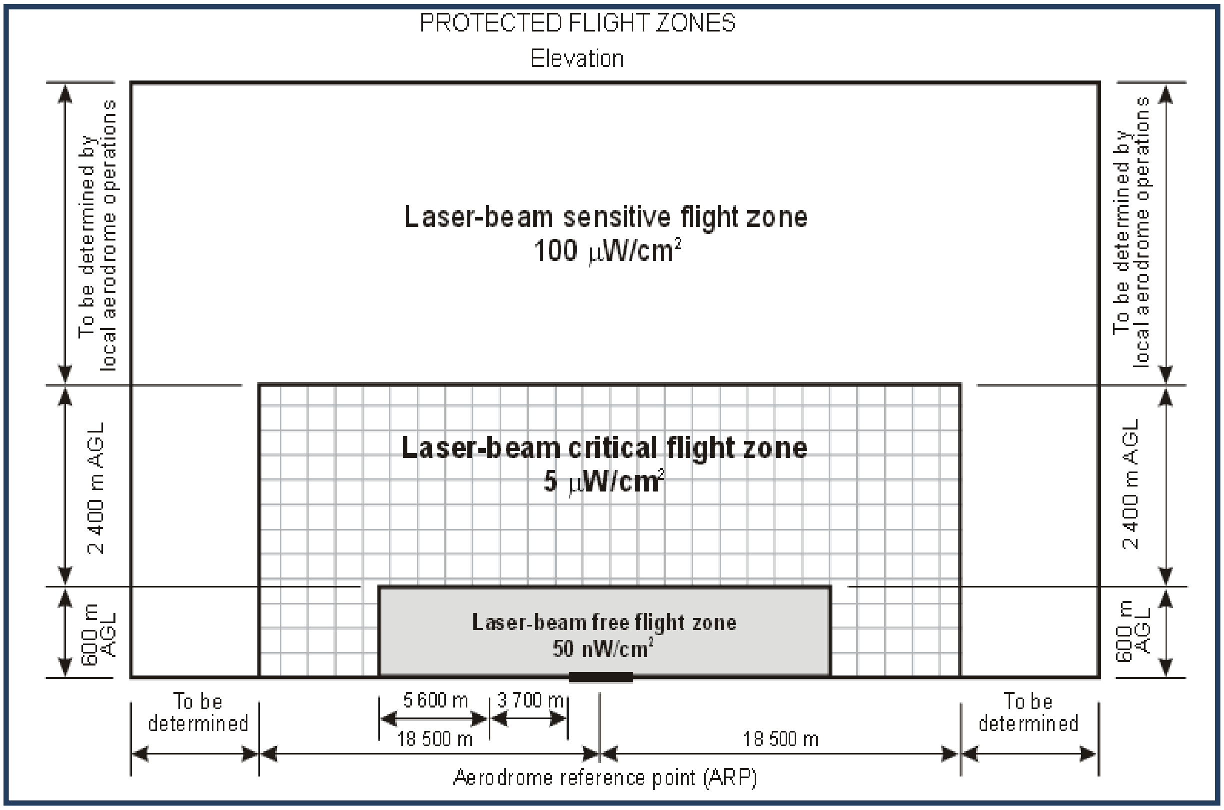


Figure 5-13. Protected flight zones with indication of maximum irradiance levels for visible laser beams

Lights which may cause confusion

5.3.1.3 A non-aeronautical ground light which, by reason of its intensity, configuration or colour, might prevent, or cause confusion in, the clear interpretation of aeronautical ground lights should be extinguished, screened or otherwise modified so as to eliminate such a possibility. In particular, attention should be directed to a nonaeronautical ground light visible from the air within the areas described hereunder:

1. **Instrument runway —code number 4**: within the areas before the threshold and beyond the end of the runway extending at least 4 500 m in length from the threshold and runway end and 750 m either side of the extended runway centre line in width.
2. **Instrument runway — code number 2 or 3**: as in a), except that the length should be at least 3 000 m.
3. **Instrument runway** — code number 1; and **non-instrument runway**: within the approach area.

5.3.24 Apron floodlighting(see also 5.3.17.1 and 5.3.18.1)

Application

5.3.24.1 Apron floodlighting should be provided on an apron, on a de-icing/anti-icing facility and on a designated isolated aircraft parking position intended to be used at night.

Note 1—Where a de-icing/anti-icing facility is located in close proximity to the runway and permanent floodlighting could be confusing to pilots, other means of illumination of the facility may be required.

Note 2.— The designation of an isolated aircraft parking position is specified in 3.14.

Note 3.— Guidance on apron floodlighting is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

Location

5.3.24.2 Apron floodlights should be located so as to provide adequate illumination on all apron service areas, with a minimum of glare to pilots of aircraft in flight and on the ground, aerodrome and apron controllers, and personnel on the apron. The arrangement and aiming of floodlights should be such that an aircraft stand receives light from two or more directions to minimize shadows.

Characteristics

5.3.24.3 The spectral distribution of apron floodlights shall be such that the colours used for aircraft marking connected with routine servicing, and for surface and obstacle marking, can be correctly identified.

5.3.24.4 The average illuminance should be at least the following:

Aircraft stand: — horizontalilluminance — 20 lux with a uniformity ratio (average to minimum) of not more than 4 to 1; and — vertical illuminance — 20 lux at a height of 2 m above the apron in relevant directions.

Other apron areas: — horizontal illuminance—50 per cent of the average illuminance on the aircraft stands with a uniformity ratio (average to minimum) of not more than 4 to 1.

5.3.25 Visual docking guidance system

Application

5.3.25.1 A visual docking guidance system shall be provided when it is intended to indicate, by a visual aid, the precise positioning of an aircraft on an aircraft stand and other alternative means, such as marshallers, are not practicable.

Note.—The factors to be considered in evaluating the need for a visual docking guidance system are in particular: the number and type(s) of aircraft using the aircraft stand, weather conditions, space available on the apron and the precision required for manoeuvring into the parking position due to aircraft servicing installation, passenger loading bridges, etc. See the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4 — Visual Aids for guidance on the selection of suitable systems.

Characteristics

5.3.25.2 The system shall provide both azimuth and stopping guidance.

5.3.25.3 The azimuth guidance unit and the stopping position indicator shall be adequate for use in all weather, visibility, background lighting and pavement conditions for which the system is intended, both by day and night, but shall not dazzle the pilot.

Note.— Care is required in both the design and on-site installation of the system to ensure that reflection of sunlight, or other light in the vicinity, does not degrade the clarity and conspicuity of the visual cues provided by the system.

5.3.25.4 The azimuth guidance unit and the stopping position indicator shall be of a design such that:

a) a clear indication of malfunction of either or both is available to the pilot; and

b) they can be turned off.

5.3.25.5 The azimuth guidance unit and the stopping position indicator shall be located in such a way that there is continuity of guidance between the aircraft stand markings, the aircraft stand manoeuvring guidance lights, if present, and the visual docking guidance system.

5.3.25.6 The accuracy of the system shall be adequate for the type of loading bridge and fixed aircraft servicing installations with which it is to be used.

5.3.25.7 The system should be usable by all types of aircraft for which the aircraft stand is intended, preferably without selective operation.

5.3.25.8 If selective operation is required to prepare the system for use by a particular type of aircraft, then the system shall provide an identification of the selected aircraft type to both the pilot and the system operator as a means of ensuring that the system has been set properly.

Azimuth guidance unit

Location

5.3.25.9 The azimuth guidance unit shall be located on or close to the extension of the stand centre line ahead of the aircraft so that its signals are visible from the cockpit of an aircraft throughout the docking manoeuvre and aligned for use at least by the pilot occupying the left seat.

5.3.25.10 The azimuth guidance unit should be aligned for use by the pilots occupying both the left and right seats.

Characteristics

5.3.25.11 The azimuth guidance unit shall provide unambiguous left/right guidance which enables the pilot to acquire and maintain the lead-in line without over-controlling.

5.3.25.12 When azimuth guidance is indicated by colour change, green shall be used to identify the centre line and red for deviations from the centre line.

Stopping position indicator

Location

5.3.25.13 The stopping position indicator shall be located in conjunction with, or sufficiently close to, the azimuth guidance unit so that a pilot can observe both the azimuth and stop signals without turning the head.

5.3.25.14 The stopping position indicator shall be usable at least by the pilot occupying the left seat.

5.3.25.15 The stopping position indicator should be usable by the pilots occupying both the left and right seats.

Characteristics

5.3.25.16 The stopping position information provided by the indicator for a particular aircraft type shall account for the anticipated range of variations in pilot eye height and/or viewing angle.

5.3.25.17 The stopping position indicator shall show the stopping position for the aircraft for which guidance is being provided and shall provide closing rate information to enable the pilot to gradually decelerate the aircraft to a full stop at the intended stopping position.

5.3.25.18 The stopping position indicator should provide closing rate information over a distance of at least 10 m.

5.3.25.18 When stopping guidance is indicated by colour change, green shall be used to show that the aircraft can proceed and red to show that the stop point has been reached ,except that for a short distance prior to the stop point a third colour may be used to warn that the stopping point is close.

5.3.26 Advanced visual docking guidance system

Application

Note 1—Advanced visual docking guidance systems (A-VDGS) include those systems that, in addition to basic and passive azimuth and stop position information, provide pilots with active (usually sensor-based) guidance information, such as aircraft type indication (in accordance with Doc 8643 — Aircraft Type Designators), distance-to-go information and closing speed. Docking guidance information is usually provided on a single display unit.

Note 2.— An A-VDGS may provide docking guidance information in three stages: the acquisition of the aircraft by the system, the azimuth alignment of the aircraft, and the stopping position information.

5.3.26.1 An A-VDGS should be provided where it is operationally desirable to confirm the correct aircraft type for which guidance is being provided and/or to indicate the stand centre line in use, where more than one is provided for.

5.3.26.2 The A-VDGS shall be suitable for use by all types of aircraft for which the aircraft stand is intended.

5.3.26.3 The A-VDGS shall be used only in conditions in which its operational performance is specified.

Note 1.—The use of the A-VDGS in conditions such as weather, visibility and background lighting, both by day and night, would need to be specified.

Note 2.—Care is required in both the design and on-site installation of the system to ensure that glare, reflection of sunlight, or other light in the vicinity, does not degrade the clarity and conspicuity of the visual cues provided by the system.

5.3.26.4 The docking guidance information provided by an A-VDGS shall not conflict with that provided by a conventional visual docking guidance system on an aircraft stand if both types are provided and are in operational use. A method of indicating that the A-VDGS is not in operational use or is unserviceable shall be provided.

Location

5.3.26.5 The A-VDGS shall be located such that unobstructed and unambiguous guidance is provided to the person responsible for, and persons assisting, the docking of the aircraft throughout the docking manoeuvre.

Note.— Usually the pilot-in-command is responsible for the docking of the aircraft. However, in some circumstances, another person could be responsible and this person may be the driver of a vehicle that is towing the aircraft.

Characteristics

5.3.26.6 The A-VDGS shall provide, at minimum, the following guidance information at the appropriate stage of the docking manoeuvre:

a) an emergency stop indication;

b) the aircraft type and model for which the guidance is provided;

c) an indication of the lateral displacement of the aircraft relative to the stand centre line;

d) the direction of azimuth correction needed to correct a displacement from the stand centre line;

e) an indication of the distance to the stop position;

f) an indication when the aircraft has reached the correct stopping position; and

g) a warning indication if the aircraft goes beyond the appropriate stop position.

5.3.26.7 The A-VDGS shall be capable of providing docking guidance information for all aircraft taxi speeds encountered during the docking manoeuvre.

Note.— See the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4, for an indication of the maximum aircraft speeds relative to distance to the stopping position.

5.3.26.8 The time taken from the determination of the lateral displacement to its display shall not result in a deviation of the aircraft, when operated in normal conditions, from the stand centre line greater than 1 m.

5.3.26.9 The information on displacement of the aircraft relative to the stand centre line and distance to the stopping position, when displayed, should be provided with the accuracy specified in Table 5-4.

5.3.26.10 Symbols and graphics used to depict guidance information shall be intuitively representative of the type of information provided.

Note.— The use of colour would need to be appropriate and need to follow signal convention, i.e. red, yellow and green mean hazard, caution and normal/correct conditions, respectively. The effects of colour contrasts would also need to be considered.

5.3.26.11 Information on the lateral displacement of the aircraft relative to the stand centre line shall be provided at least 25 m prior to the stop position.

Note.— The indication of the distance of the aircraft from the stop position may be colour-coded and presented at a rate and distance proportional to the actual closure rate and distance of the aircraft approaching the stop point.

5.3.26.12 Continuous closure distance and closure rate shall be provided from at least 15 m prior to the stop position.

5.3.26.13 Where provided, closure distance displayed in numerals should be provided in metre integers to the stop position and displayed to 1 decimal place at least 3 m prior to the stop position.

Table 5-4. A-VDGS recommended displacement accuracy

Guidance information	Maximum deviation at stop position (stop area)	Maximum deviation at 9 m from stop position	Maximum deviation at 15 m from stop position	Maximum deviation at 25 m from stop position
Azimuth	±250 mm	±340 mm	±400 mm	±500 mm
Distance	±500 mm	±1 000 mm	±1 300 mm	Not specified

5.3.26.14 Throughout the docking manoeuvre, an appropriate means shall be provided on the A- VDGS to indicate the need to bring the aircraft to an immediate halt. In such an event, which includes a failure of the A-VDGS, no other information shall be displayed.

5.3.26.15 Provision to initiate an immediate halt to the docking procedure shall be made available to personnel responsible for the operational safety of the stand.

5.3.26.16 The word "stop" in red characters should be displayed when an immediate cessation of the docking man oeuvre is required.

5.4 Signs

5.4.1 General

Note.—Signs shall be either fixed message signs or variable message signs. Guidance on signs is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

Application

5.4.1.1 Signs shall be provided to convey a mandatory instruction, information on a specific location or destination on a movement area or to provide other information to meet the requirements of 9.8.1.

Note.— See 5.2.17 for specifications on information marking.

5.4.1.2 A variable message sign should be provided where:

a) the instruction or information displayed on the sign is relevant only during a certain period of time; and/or

b) there is a need for variable predetermined information to be displayed on the sign to meet the requirements of 9.8.1.

Characteristics

5.4.1.3 Signs shall be frangible. Those located near a runway or taxiway shall be sufficiently low to preserve clearance for propellers and the engine pods of jet aircraft. The installed height of the sign shall not exceed the dimension shown in the appropriate column of Table 5-5.

5.4.1.4 Signs shall be rectangular, as shown in Figures 5-30 and 5-31 with the longer side horizontal.

5.4.1.5 The only signs on the movement area utilizing red shall be mandatory instruction signs.

5.4.1.6 The inscriptions on a sign shall be in accordance with the provisions of Appendix 4.

Table 5-5. Location distances for taxiing guidance signs including runway exit signs

Code number	Sign height (mm) Legend	Face (min.)	Installed (max.)	Perpendicular distance from defined taxiway pavement edge to near side of sign	Perpendicular distance from defined runway pavement edge to near side of sign
1 or 2	200	400	700	5–11 m	3–10 m
1 or 2	300	600	900	5–11 m	3–10 m
3 or 4	300	600	900	11–21 m	8–15 m
3 or 4	400	800	1 100	11–21 m	8–15 m

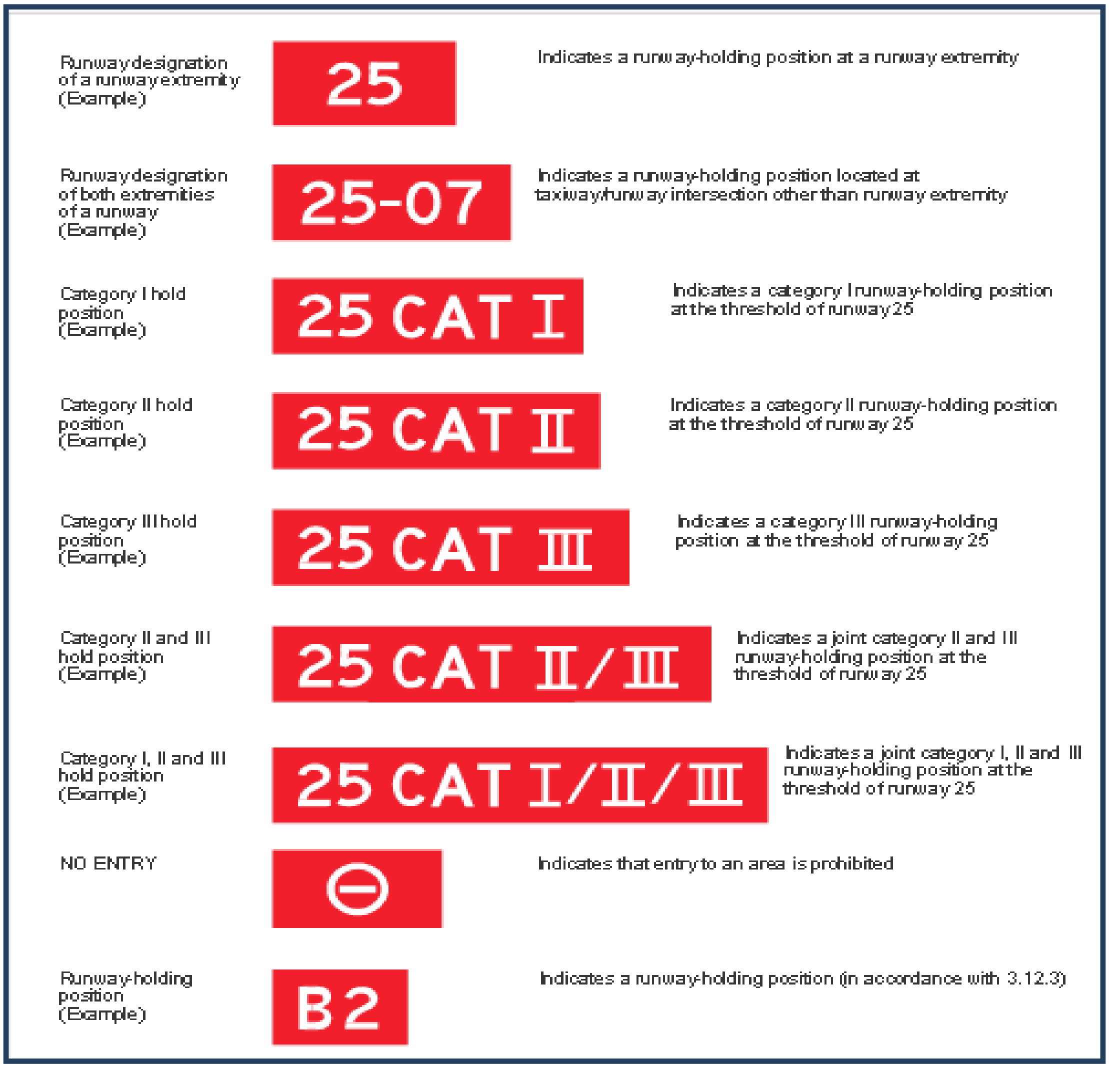


Figure 5-30. Mandatory instruction signs

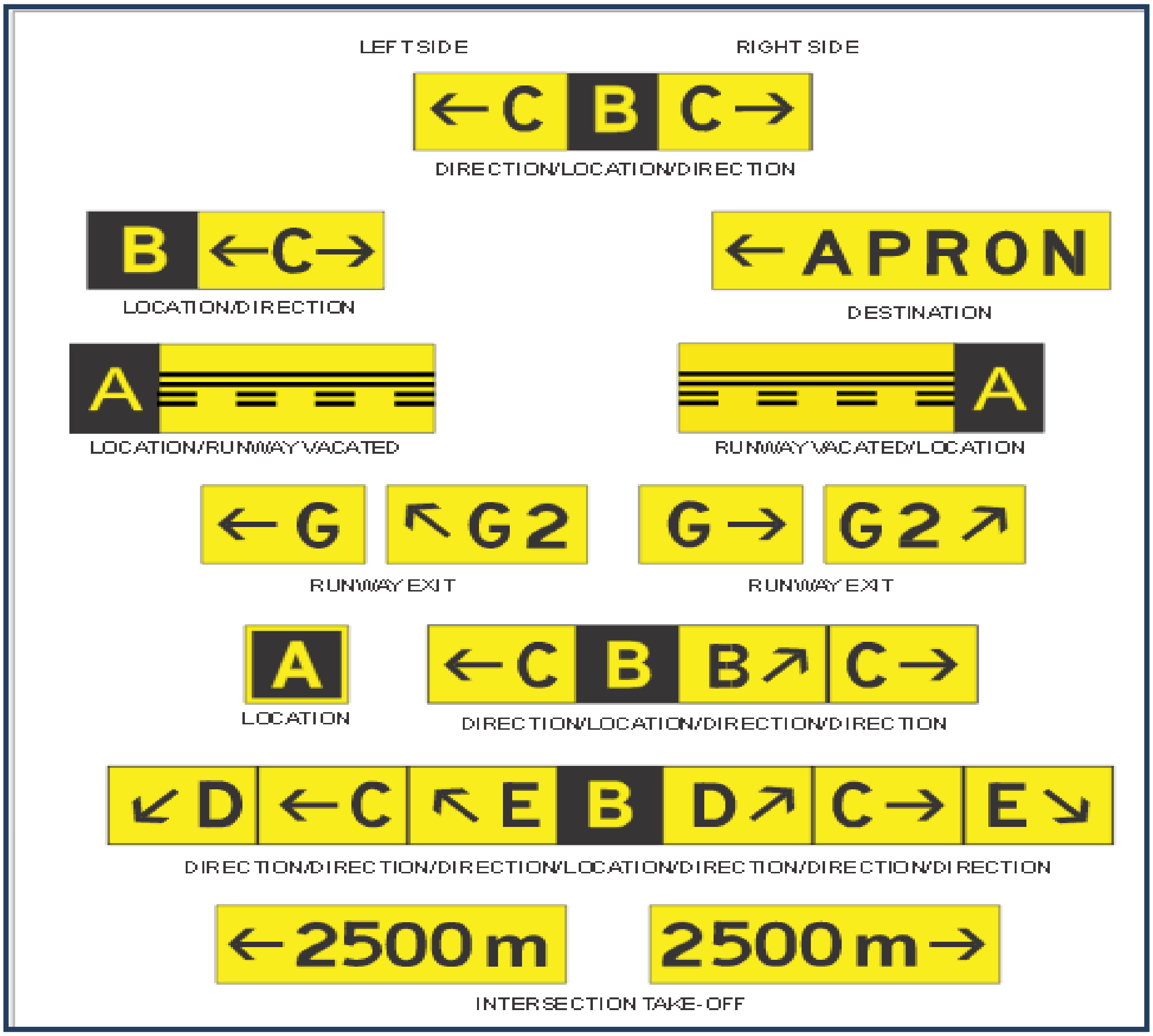


Figure 5-31. Information signs

5.4.1.7 Signs shall be illuminated in accordance with the provisions of Appendix 4 when intended for use:

a) in runway visual range conditions less than a value of 800 m; or

b) at night in association with instrument runways; or

c) at night in association with non-instrument runways where the code number is 3 or 4.

5.4.1.8 Signs shall be retroreflective and/or illuminated in accordance with the provisions of Appendix 4 when intended for use at night in association with non-instrument runways where the code number is 1 or 2.

5.4.1.9 A variable message sign shall show a blankface when not in use.

5.4.1.10 In case of failure, a variable message sign shall not provide information that could lead to unsafe action from a pilot or a vehicle driver.

5.4.1.11 The time interval to change from one message to another on a variable message sign should be as short as practicable and should not exceed 5 seconds.

5.4.2 Mandatory instruction signs

Note.— See Figure 5-30 for pictorial representation of mandatory instruction signs and Figure 5- 32 for examples of locating signs at taxiway/runway intersections.

Application

5.4.2.1 A mandatory instruction sign shall be provided to identify a location beyond which an aircraft taxiing or vehicle shall not proceed unless authorized by the aerodrome control tower.

5.4.2.2 Mandatory instruction signs shall include runway designation signs, category I, II or III holding position signs, runway-holding position signs, road-holding position signs and NO ENTRY signs.

Note.— See 5.4.7 for specifications on road-holding position signs.

5.4.2.3 A pattern “A” runway-holding position marking shall be supplemented at a taxiway/runway intersection or a runway/runway intersection with a runway designation sign.

5.4.2.4 A pattern “B” runway-holding position marking shall be supplemented with a category I, II or III holding position sign.

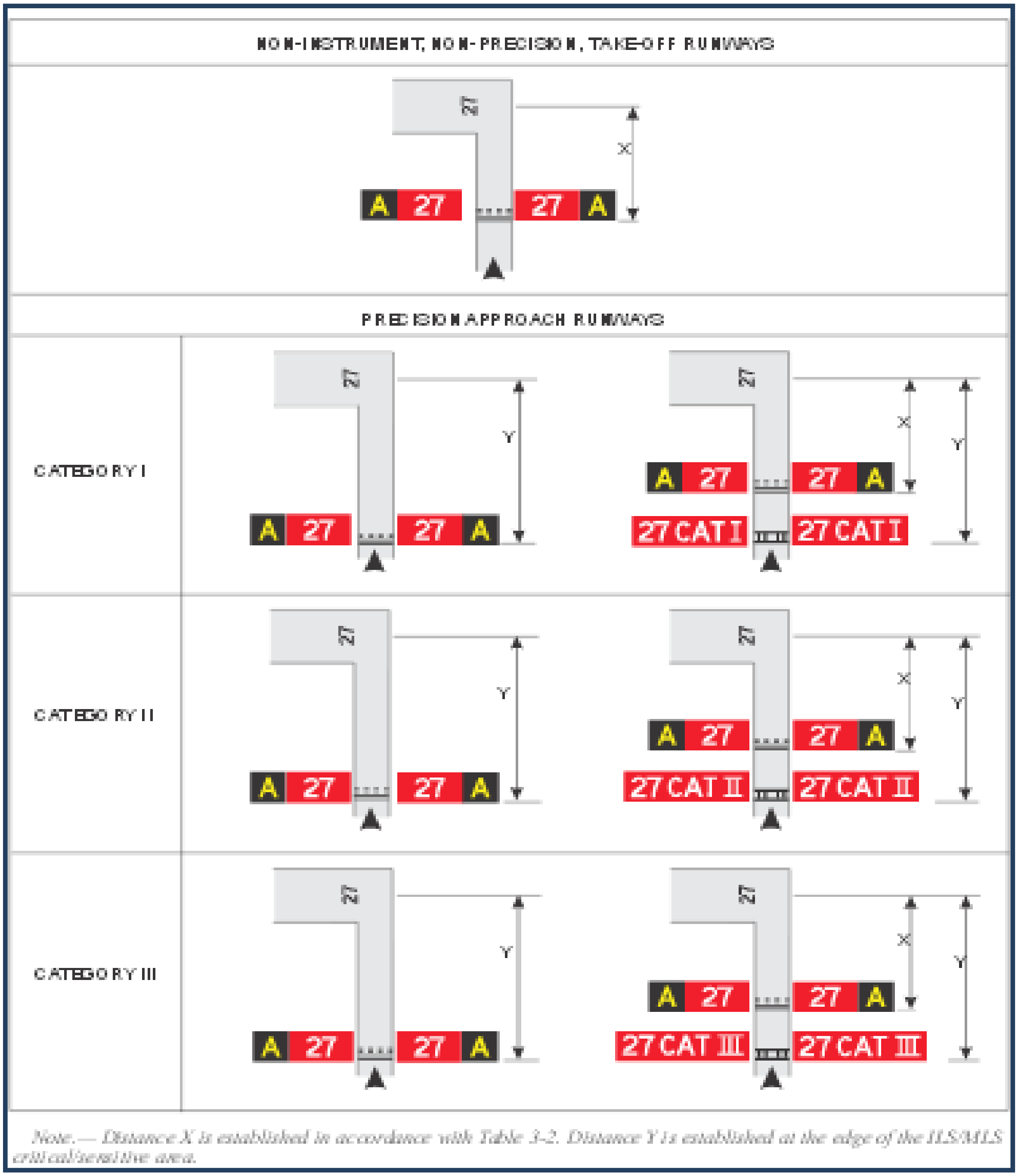
5.4.2.5 A pattern “A” runway-holding position marking at a runway-holding position established in accordance with 3.12.3 shall be supplemented with a runway-holding position sign.

Note.— See 5.2.10 for specifications on runway-holding position marking.

5.4.2.6 A runway designation sign at a taxiway/runway intersection should be supplemented with a location sign in the outboard (farthest from the taxiway) position, as appropriate.

Note.— See 5.4.3 for characteristics of location signs.

5.4.2.7 A NO ENTRY sign shall be provided when entry into an area is prohibited.



Note.—Distance X is established in accordance with Table 3-2. Distance Y is established at the edge of the ILS/MLScritical/sensitive area.

Figure 5-32. Examples of sign positions at taxiway/runway intersections

Location

5.4.2.8 A runway designation sign at a taxiway/runway intersection or a runway/runway intersection shall be located on each side of the runway-holding position marking facing the direction of approach to the runway.

5.4.2.9 A category I, II or III holding position sign shall be located on each side of the runway- holding position marking facing the direction of the approach to the critical area.

5.4.2.10 A NO ENTRY sign shall be located at the beginning of the area to which entrance is prohibited on each side of the taxiway as viewed by the pilot.

5.4.2.11 A runway-holding position sign shall be located on each side of the runway-holding position established in accordance with 3.12.3, facing the approach to the obstacle limitation surface or ILS/MLS critical/sensitive area, as appropriate.

Characteristics

5.4.2.12 A mandatory instruction sign shall consist of an inscription in white on a red background.

5.4.2.13 Where, owing to environmental or other factors, the conspicuity of the inscription on a mandatory instruction sign needs to be enhanced, the outside edge of the white inscription should be supplemented by a black outline measuring 10 mm in width for runway code numbers 1 and 2, and 20 mm in width for runway code numbers 3 and 4.

5.4.2.14 The inscription on a runway designation sign shall consist of the runway designations of the intersecting runway properly oriented with respect to the viewing position of the sign, except that a runway designation sign installed in the vicinity of a runway extremity may show the runway designation of the concerned runway extremityonly.

5.4.2.15 The inscription on a category I, II, III, joint II/III or joint I/II/III holding position sign shall consist of the runway designator followed by CAT I, CAT II, CAT III, CAT II/III or CAT I/II/III, as appropriate.

5.4.2.16 The inscription on a NO ENTRY sign shall be in accordance with Figure 5-30.

5.4.2.17 The inscription on a runway-holding position sign at a runway-holding position established in accordance with 3.12.3 shall consist of the taxiway designation and a number.

5.4.2.18 Where installed, the inscriptions/symbol of Figure 5-30 shall be used.

5.4.3 Information signs

Note.— See Figure 5-31 for pictorial representations of information signs.

Application

5.4.3.1 An information sign shall be provided where there is an operational need to identify by a sign, a specific location, or routing (direction or destination) information.

5.4.3.2 Information signs shall include: direction signs, location signs, destination signs, runway exit signs, runway vacated signs and intersection take-off signs.

5.4.3.3 A runway exit sign shall be provided where there is an operational need to identify a runway exit.

5.4.3.4 A runway vacated sign shall be provided where the exit taxiway is not provided with taxiway centre line lights and there is a need to indicate to a pilot leaving a runway the perimeter of the ILS/MLS critical/sensitive area or the lower edge of the inner transitional surface, whichever is farther from the runway centre line.

Note.— See 5.3.17 for specifications on colour coding taxiway centre line lights.

5.4.3.5 An intersection take-off sign should be provided when there is an operational need to indicate the remaining take-off run available (TORA) for intersection take-offs.

5.4.3.6 Where necessary, a destination sign should be provided to indicate the direction to a specific destination on the aerodrome, such as cargo area, general aviation, etc.

5.4.3.7 A combined location and direction sign shall be provided when it is intended to indicate routing information prior to a taxiway intersection.

5.4.3.8 A direction sign shall be provided when there is an operational need to identify the designation and direction of taxiways at an intersection.

5.4.3.9 A location sign should be provided at an intermediate holding position.

5.4.3.10 A location sign shall be provided in conjunction with a runway designation sign except at a runway/runway intersection.

5.4.3.11 A location sign shall be provided in conjunction with a direction sign, except that it may be omitted where an aeronautical study indicates that it is not needed.

5.4.3.12 Where necessary, a location sign should be provided to identify taxiways exiting an apron or taxiways beyond an intersection.

5.4.3.13 Where a taxiway ends at an intersection such as a ‘‘T’’ and it is necessary to identify this, a barricade, direction sign and/or other appropriate visual aid should be used.

Location

5.4.3.14 Except as specified in 5.4.3.16 and 5.4.3.24 information signs shall, wherever practicable, be located on the left-hand side of the taxiway in accordance with Table 5-5.

5.4.3.15 At a taxiway intersection, information signs shall be located prior to the intersection and in line with the intermediate holding position marking. Where there is no intermediate holding position marking, the signs shall be installed at least 60 m from the centre line of the intersecting taxiway where the code number is 3 or 4, and at least 40 m where the code number is 1 or 2.

Note.— A location sign installed beyond a taxiway intersection may be installed on either side of a taxiway.

5.4.3.16 A runway exit sign shall be located on the same side of the runway as the exit is located (i.e. left or right) and positioned in accordance with Table 5-5.

5.4.3.17 A runway exit sign shall be located prior to the runway exit point in line with a position at least 60 m prior to the point of tangency where the code number is 3 or 4, and at least 30 m where the code number is 1 or 2.

5.4.3.18 A runway vacated sign shall be located at least on one side of the taxiway. The distance between the sign and the centre line of a runway shall be not less than the greater of the following:

a) the distance between the centre line of the runway and the perimeter of the ILS/MLS critical/sensitive area; or

b) the distance between the centre line of the runway and the lower edge of the inner transitional surface.

5.4.3.19 Where provided in conjunction with a runway vacated sign, the taxiway location sign shall be positioned outboard of the runway vacated sign.

5.4.3.20 An intersection take-off sign shall be located at the left-hand side of the entry taxiway. The distance between the sign and the centre line of the runway shall be not less than 60 m where the code number is 3 or 4, and not less than 45 m where the code number is 1 or 2.

5.4.3.21 A taxiway location sign installed in conjunction with a runway designation sign shall be positioned outboard of the runway designation sign.

5.4.3.22 A destination sign should not normally be collocated with a location or direction sign.

5.4.3.23 An information sign other than a location sign shall not be collocated with a mandatory instruction sign.

5.4.3.24 A direction sign, barricade and/or other appropriate visual aid used to identify a ‘‘T’’ intersection should be located on the opposite side of the intersection facing the taxiway.

Characteristics

5.4.3.25 An information sign other than a location sign shall consist of an inscription in black on a yellow background.

5.4.3.26 A location sign shall consist of an inscription in yellow on a black background and where it is a stand-alone sign shall have a yellow border.

5.4.3.27 The inscription on a runway exit sign shall consist of the designator of the exit taxiway and an arrow indicating the direction to follow.

5.4.3.28 The inscription on a runway vacated sign shall depict the pattern A runway-holding position marking as shown in Figure 5-31.

5.4.3.29 The inscription on an intersection take-off sign shall consist of a numerical message indicating the remaining take-off run available in metres plus an arrow, appropriately located and oriented, indicating the direction of the take-off as shown in Figure 5-31.

5.4.3.30 The inscription on a destination sign shall comprise an alpha, alphanumerical or numerical message identifying the destination plus an arrow indicating the direction to proceed as shown in Figure 5-31.

5.4.3.31 The inscription on a direction sign shall comprise an alpha or alphanumerical message identifying the taxiway(s) plus an arrow or arrows appropriately oriented as shown in Figure 5-31.

5.4.3.32 The inscription on a location sign shall comprise the designation of the location taxiway, runway or other pavement the aircraft is on or is entering and shall not contain arrows.

5.4.3.33 Where it is necessary to identify each of a series of intermediate holding positions on the same taxiway, the location sign should consist of the taxiway designation and a number.

5.4.3.34 Where a location sign and direction signs are used in combination:

a) all direction signs related to left turns shall be placed on the left side of the location sign, and all direction signs related to right turns shall be placed on the right side of the location sign, except that where the junction consists of one intersecting taxiway, the location sign may alternatively be placed on the left-hand side;

b) the direction signs shall be placed such that the direction of the arrows departs increasingly from the vertical with increasing deviation of the corresponding taxiway;

c) an appropriate direction sign shall be placed next to the location sign where the direction of the location taxiway changes significantly beyond the intersection; and

d) adjacent direction signs shall be delineated by a vertical black line as shown in Figure 5-31.

5.4.3.35 A taxiway shall be identified by a designator comprising a letter, letters or a combination of a letter or letters followed by a number.

5.4.3.35 When designating taxiways, the use of the letters I, O or X and the use of words such as inner and outer should be avoided wherever possible to avoid confusion with the numerals 1, 0 and closed marking.

5.4.3.36 The use of numbers alone on the maneuvering area shall be reserved for the designation of runways.

5.4.4 VOR aerodrome checkpoint sign

Application

5.4.4.1 When a VOR aerodrome checkpoint is established, it shall be indicated by a VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking and sign.

Note.— See 5.2.12 for VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking.

Location

5.4.4.2 A VOR aerodrome checkpoint sign shall be located as near as possible to the checkpoint and so that the inscriptions are visible from the cockpit of an aircraft properly positioned on the VOR aerodrome checkpoint marking.

Characteristics

5.4.4.3 A VOR aerodrome checkpoint sign shall consist of an inscription in black on a yellow background.

5.4.4.4 The inscriptions on a VOR checkpoint sign should be in accordance with one of the alternatives shown in Figure 5-33 in which:

VOR is an abbreviation identifying this as a VOR checkpoint; 116.3 is an example of the radio frequency of the VOR concerned;147°is an example of the VOR bearing, to the nearest degree, which should be indicated at the VOR check point; and 4.3 NM is an example of the distance in nautical miles to a DME collocated with the VOR concerned.

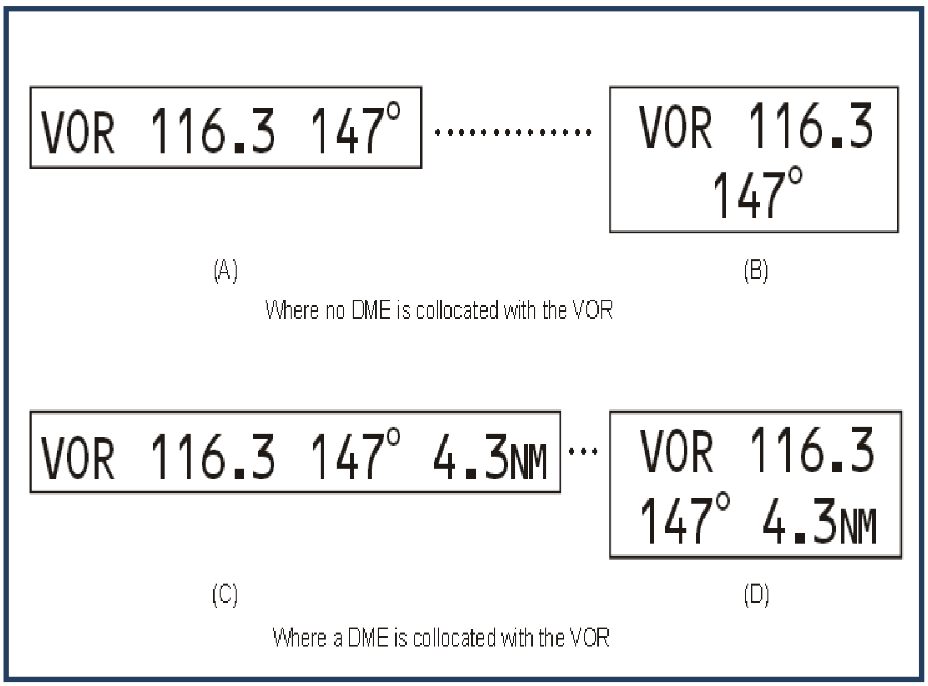


Figure 5-33. VOR aerodrome checkpoint sign

Note.—Tolerances for the bearing value shown on the sign are given in Annex 10, Volume I, Attachment E. It will be noted that a checkpoint can only be used operationally when periodic checks show it to be consistently within ±2 degrees of the stated bearing.

5.4.5 Aerodrome identification sign

Application

5.4.5.1 An aerodrome identification sign should be provided at an aerodrome where there is insufficient alternative means of visual identification.

Location

5.4.5.2 The aerodrome identification sign should be placed on the aerodrome so as to be legible, in so far as is practicable, at all angles above the horizontal.

Characteristics

5.4.5.3 The aerodrome identification sign shall consist of the name of the aerodrome.

5.4.5.4 The colour selected for the sign should give adequate conspicuity when viewed against its background.

5.4.5.5 The characters should have a height of not less than 3 m.

5.4.6 Aircraft stand identification signs Application

5.4.6.1 An aircraft stand identification marking should be supplemented with an aircraft stand identification sign where feasible.

Location

5.4.6.2 An aircraft stand identification sign should be located so as to be clearly visible from the cockpit of an aircraft prior to entering the aircraft stand.

Characteristics

5.4.6.3 An aircraft stand identification sign should consist of an inscription in black on a yellow background.

5.4.7 Road-holding position sign

5.4.7.1 A road-holding position sign shall be provided at all road entrances to a runway.

Location

5.4.7.2 The road-holding position sign shall be located 1.5 m from one edge of the road (left or right as appropriate to the local traffic regulations) at the holding position.

Characteristics

5.4.7.3 A road-holding position sign shall consist of an inscription in white on a red background.

5.4.7.4 The inscription on a road-holding position sign shall be in the national language, be in conformity with the local traffic regulations and include the following:

a) a requirement to stop; and

b) where appropriate:

1) a requirement to obtain ATC clearance; and

2) location designator.

Note.— Examples of road-holding position signs are contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

5.4.7.5 A road-holding position sign intended for night use shall be retroreflective or illuminated.

5.5 Markers

5.5.1 General

Markers shall be frangible. Those located near a runway or taxiway shall be sufficiently low to preserve clearance for propellers and for the engine pods of jet aircraft.

Note 1.— Anchors or chains, to prevent markers which have broken from their mounting from blowing away, are sometimes used.

Note 2.— Guidance on frangibility of markers is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 6.

5.5.2 Unpaved runway edge markers Application

5.5.2.1 Markers should be provided when the extent of an unpaved runway is not clearly indicated by the appearance of its surface compared with that of the surrounding ground.

Location

5.5.2.2 Where runway lights are provided, the markers should be incorporated in the light fixtures. Where there are no lights, markers of flat rectangular or conical shape should be placed so as to delimit the runway clearly.

Characteristics

5.5.2.3 The flat rectangular markers should have a minimum size of 1 m by 3 m and should be placed with their long dimension parallel to the runway centre line. The conical markers should have a height not exceeding 50 cm.

5.5.3 Stopway edge markers

Application

5.5.3.1 Stopway edge markers should be provided when the extent of a stopway is not clearly indicated by its appearance compared with that of the surrounding ground.

Characteristics

5.5.3.2 The stopway edge markers shall be sufficiently different from any runway edge markers used to ensure that the two types of markers cannot be confused.

Note.— Markers consisting of small vertical boards camouflaged on the reverse side, as viewed from the runway, have proved operationally acceptable.

5.5.4 Edge markers for snow-covered runways Application

5.5.4.1 Edge markers for snow-covered runways should be used to indicate the usable limits of a snow-covered runway when the limits are not otherwise indicated.

Note.—Runway lights could be used to indicate the limits.

Location

5.5.4.2 Edge markers for snow-covered runways should be placed along the sides of the runway at intervals of not more than 100 m, and should be located symmetrically about the runway centre line at such a distance from the centre line that there is adequate clearance for wing tips and powerplants. Sufficient markers should be placed across the threshold and end of the runway.

Characteristics

5.5.4.3 Edge markers for snow-covered runways should consist of conspicuous objects such as evergreen trees about 1.5 m high, or light-weight markers.

5.5.5 Taxiway edge markers Application

5.5.5.1 Taxiway edge markers should be provided on a taxiway where the code number is 1 or 2 and taxiway centre line or edge lights or taxiway centre line markers are not provided.

Location

5.5.5.2 Taxiway edge markers should be installed at least at the same locations as would the taxiway edge lights had they been used.

Characteristics

5.5.5.3 A taxiway edge marker shall be retroreflective blue.

5.5.5.4 The marked surface as viewed by the pilot should be a rectangle and should have a minimum viewing area of 150 cm^2.

5.5.5.5 Taxiway edge markers shall be frangible. Their height shall be sufficiently low to preserve clearance for propellers and for the engine pods of jet aircraft.

5.5.6 Taxiway centre line markers Application

5.5.6.1 Taxiway centre line markers should be provided on a taxiway where the code number is 1 or 2 and taxiway centre line or edge lights or taxiway edge markers are not provided.

5.5.6.2 Taxiwaycentre line markers should be provided on a taxiway where the code number is 3 or 4 and taxiway centre line lights are not provided if there is a need to improve the guidance provided by the taxiway centre line marking.

Location

5.5.6.3 Taxiway centre line markers should be installed at least at the same location as would taxiway centre line lights had they been used.

5.5.6.4 Taxiway centre line markers should normally be located on the taxiway centre line marking except that they may be offset by not more than 30 cm where it is not practicable to locate them on the marking.

Characteristics

5.5.6.5 A taxiway centre line marker shall be retroreflective green.

5.5.6.6 The marked surface as viewed by the pilot should be a rectangle and should have a minimum viewing area of 20 cm^2.

5.5.6.7 Taxiwaycentre line markers shall be so designed and fitted as to withstand being run over by the wheels of an aircraft without damage either to the aircraft or to the markers themselves.

5.5.7 Unpaved taxiway edge markers

Application

5.5.7.1 Where the extent of an unpaved taxiway is not clearly indicated by its appearance compared with that of the surrounding ground, markers should be provided.

Location

5.5.7.2 Where taxiway lights are provided, the markers should be incorporated in the light fixtures. Where there are no lights, markers of conical shape should be placed so as to delimit the taxiway clearly.

5.5.8 Boundary markers Application

5.5.8.1 Boundary markers shall be provided at an aerodrome where the landing area has no runway.

Location

5.5.8.2 Boundary markers shall be spaced along the boundary of the landing area at intervals of not more than 200 m, if the type shown in Figure 5-34 is used, or approximately 90 m, if the conical type is used with a marker at any corner.

Characteristics

5.5.8.3 Boundary markers should be of a form similar to that shown in Figure 5-34, or in the form of a cone not less than 50 cm high and not less than 75 cm in diameter at the base. The markers should be coloured to contrast with the background against which they will be seen. A single colour, orange or red, or two contrasting colours, orange and white or alternatively red and white, should be used, except where such colours merge with the background.

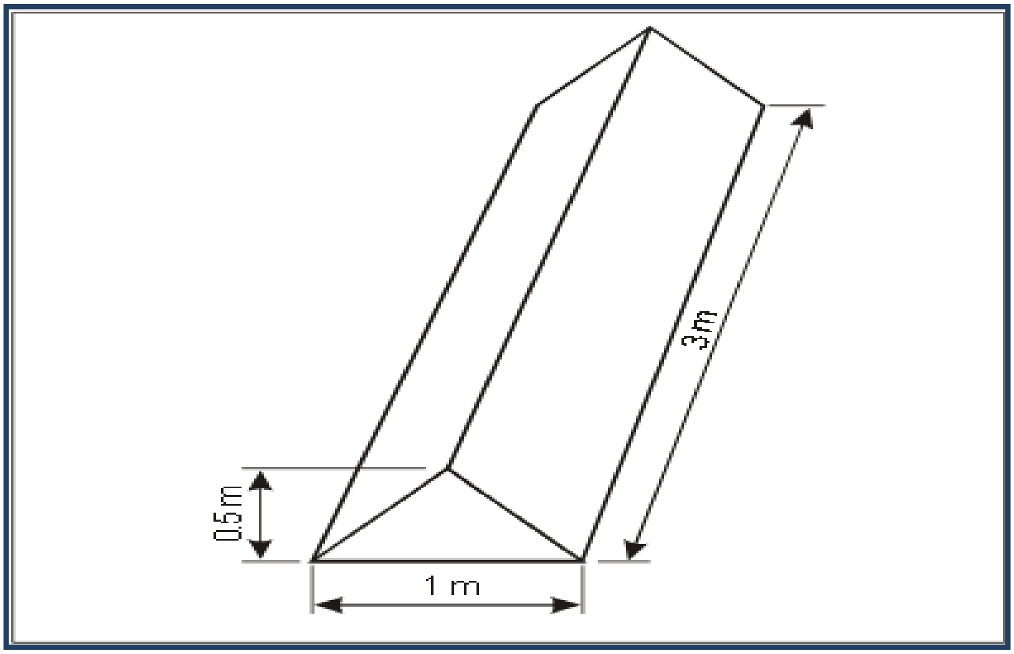


Figure 5-34. Boundary markers

CHAPTER 6. VISUAL AIDS FOR DENOTING OBSTACLES

6.1 Objects to be marked and/or lighted

Note—The marking and/or lighting of obstacles is intended to reduce hazards to aircraft by indicating the presence of the obstacles. It does not necessarily reduce operating limitations which may be imposed by an obstacle.

6.1.1 Objects within the lateral boundaries of the obstacle limitation surfaces

6.1.1.1 Vehicles and other mobile objects, excluding aircraft, on the movement area of an aerodrome are obstacles and shall be marked and, if the vehicles and aerodrome are used at night or in conditions of low visibility, lighted, except that aircraft servicing equipment and vehicles used only on aprons may be exempt.

6.1.1.2 Elevated aeronautical ground lights within the movement area shall be marked so as to be conspicuous by day. Obstacle lights shall not be installed on elevated ground lights or signs in the movement area.

6.1.1.3 All obstacles within the distance specified in Table 3-1, column 11 or 12, from the centre line of a taxiway, an apron taxiway or aircraft stand taxilane shall be marked and, if the taxiway, apron taxiway or aircraft stand taxilane is used at night, lighted.

6.1.1.4 A fixed obstacle that extends above a take-off climb surface within 3 000 m of the inner edge of the take-off climb surface should be marked and, if the runway is used at night, lighted, except that:

a) such marking and lighting may be omitted when the obstacle is shielded by another fixed obstacle;

b) the marking may be omitted when the obstacle is lighted by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, by day and its height above the level of the surrounding ground does not exceed 150 m;

c) the marking may be omitted when the obstacle is lighted by high-intensity obstacle lights by day; and

d) the lighting may be omitted where the obstacle is a lighthouse and an aeronautical study indicates the lighthouse light to be sufficient.

6.1.1.5 A fixed object, other than an obstacle, adjacent to a take-off climb surface should be marked and, if the runway is used at night, lighted, if such marking and lighting is considered necessary to ensure its avoidance, except that the marking may be omitted when:

a) the object is lighted by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, by day and its height above the level of the surrounding ground does not exceed 150 m; or

b) the object is lighted by high-intensity obstacle lights by day.

6.1.1.6 A fixed obstacle that extends above an approach surface within 3 000 m of the inner edge or above a transitional surface shall be marked and, if the runway is used at night, lighted, except that:

a) such marking and lighting may be omitted when the obstacle is shielded by another fixed obstacle;

b) the marking may be omitted when the obstacle is lighted by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, by day and its height above the level of the surrounding ground does not exceed 150 m;

c) the marking may be omitted when the obstacle is lighted by high-intensity obstacle lights by day; and
d) the lighting may be omitted where the obstacle is a lighthouse and an aeronautical study indicates the lighthouse light to be sufficient.

6.1.1.7 A fixed obstacle that extends above a horizontal surface should be marked and, if the aerodrome is used at night, lighted, except that:

a) such marking and lighting may be omitted when:

1) the obstacle is shielded by another fixed obstacle; or

2) for a circuit extensively obstructed by immovable objects or terrain, procedures have been established to ensure safe vertical clearance below prescribed flight paths; or

3) an aeronautical study shows the obstacle not to be of operational significance;

b) the marking may be omitted when the obstacle is lighted by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, by day and its height above the level of the surrounding ground does not exceed 150 m;

c) the marking may be omitted when the obstacle is lighted by high-intensity obstacle lights by day; and

d) the lighting may be omitted where the obstacle is a lighthouse and an aeronautical study indicates the lighthouse light to be sufficient.

6.1.1.8 A fixed object that extends above an obstacle protection surface shall be marked and, if the runway is used at night, lighted.

Note.— See 5.3.5 for information on the obstacle protection surface.

6.1.1.9 Other objects inside the obstacle limitation surfaces should be marked and/or lighted if an aeronautical study indicates that the object could constitute a hazard to aircraft (this includes objects adjacent to visual routes e.g. waterway or highway).

Note.— See note accompanying 4.4.2.

6.1.1.10 Overhead wires, cables, etc., crossing a river, waterway, valley or highway should be marked and their supporting towers marked and lighted if an aeronautical study indicates that the wires or cables could constitute a hazard to aircraft.

6.1.2 Objects outside the lateral boundaries of the obstacle limitation surfaces

6.1.2.1 Obstacles in accordance with 4.3.2 should be marked and lighted, except that the marking may be omitted when the obstacle is lighted by high-intensity obstacle lights by day.

6.1.2.2 Other objects outside the obstacle limitation surfaces should be marked and/or lighted if an aeronautical study indicates that the object could constitute a hazard to aircraft (this includes objects adjacent to visual routes e.g. waterway, highway).

6.1.2.3 Overhead wires, cables, etc., crossing a river, waterway, valley or highway should be marked and their supporting towers marked and lighted if an aeronautical study indicates that the wires or cables could constitute a hazard to aircraft.

6.2 Marking and/or lighting of objects

6.2.1 General

6.2.1.1 The presence of objects which must be lighted, as specified in 6.1, shall be indicated by low-, medium- or high intensity obstacle lights, or a combination of such lights.

6.2.1.2 Low-intensity obstacle lights, Types A B, C, D and E, medium-intensity obstacle lights, Types A, B and C, high-intensity obstacle lights Type A and B, shall be in accordance with the specifications in Table 6-1 and Appendix 1.

6.2.1.3 The number and arrangement of low-, medium- or high-intensity obstacle lights at each level to be marked shall be such that the object is indicated from every angle in azimuth. Where a light is shielded in any direction by another part of the object, or by an adjacent object, additional lights shall be provided on that adjacent object or the part of the object that is shielding the light, in such a way as to retain the general definition of the object to be lighted. If the shielded light does not contribute to the definition of the object to be lighted, it may be omitted.

6.2.2 Mobile objects Marking

6.2.2.1 All mobile objects to be marked shall be coloured or display flags.

Marking by colour

6.2.2.2 When mobile objects are marked by colour, a single conspicuous colour, preferably red or yellowish green for emergency vehicles and yellow for service vehicles, should be used.

Marking by flags

6.2.2.3 Flags used to mark mobile objects shall be displayed around, on top of, or around the highest edge of the object. Flags shall not increase the hazard presented by the object they mark.

6.2.2.4 Flags used to mark mobile objects shall not be less than 0.9 m on each side and shall consist of a chequeredpattern, each square having sides of not less than 0.3 m. The colours of the pattern shall contrast each with the other and with the background against which they will be seen. Orange and white or alternatively red and white shall be used, except where such colours merge with the background.

Table 6-1. Characteristics of obstacle lights

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
			Peak intensity (cd) at given Background Luminance (b)			
Light Type	Colour	Signal type/ (flash rate)	Day (Above 500 cd/m²)	Twilight (50-500 cd/m²)	Night (Below 50 cd/m²)	Light Distribution Table
Low-intensity, Type A (fixed obstacle)	Red	Fixed	N/A	N/A	10	Table 6-2
Low-intensity, Type B (fixed obstacle)	Red	Fixed	N/A	N/A	32	Table 6-2
Low-intensity, Type C (mobile obstacle)	Yellow/Blue (a)	Flashing (60-90 fpm)	N/A	40	40	Table 6-2
Low-intensity, Type D (follow-me vehicle)	Yellow	Flashing (60–90 fpm)	N/A	200	200	Table 6-2
Low-intensity, Type E	Red	Flashing (c)	N/A	N/A	32	Table 6-2 (Type B)
Medium-intensity, Type A	White	Flashing (20–60 fpm)	20 000	20 000	2 000	Table 6-3
Medium-intensity, Type B	Red	Flashing (20–60 fpm)	N/A	N/A	2 000	Table 6-3
Medium-intensity, Type C	Red	Fixed	N/A	N/A	2 000	Table 6-3
High-intensity, Type A	White	Flashing (40–60 fpm)	200 000	20 000	2 000	Table 6-3
High-intensity, Type B	White	Flashing (40–60 fpm)	100 000	20 000	2 000	Table 6-3

a) See 6.2.2.6
b) For flashing lights, effective intensity as determined in accordance with the *Aerodrome Design Manual* (Doc 9157), Part 4.
c) For wind turbine application, to flash at the same rate as the lighting on the nacelle.

Table 6-2. Light distribution for low-intensity obstacle lights

	Minimum intensity (a)	Maximum intensity (a)	Vertical beam spread (f)	
			Minimum beam spread	Intensity
Type A	10 cd (b)	N/A	10°	5 cd
Type B	32 cd (b)	N/A	10°	16 cd
Type C	40 cd (b)	400 cd	12° (d)	20 cd
Type D	200 cd (c)	400 cd	N/A (e)	N/A

Note.— This table does not include recommended horizontal beam spreads. 6.2.1.3 requires 360° coverage around an obstacle.Therefore, the number of lights needed to meet this requirement will depend on the horizontal beam spreads of each light as well as the shape of the obstacle. Thus, with narrower beam spreads, more lights will be required.

a) 360° horizontal. For flashing lights, the intensity is read into effective intensity, as determined in accordance with the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

b) Between 2 and 10° vertical. Elevation vertical angles are referenced to the horizontal when the light is levelled.

c) Between 2 and 20° vertical. Elevation vertical angles are referenced to the horizontal when the light is levelled.

d) Peak intensity should be located at approximately 2.5° vertical.

e) Peak intensity should be located at approximately 17° vertical.

f) Beam spread is defined as the angle between the horizontal plane and the directions for which the intensity exceeds that mentioned in the "intensity" column.

Table 6-3. Light distribution for medium- and high-intensity obstacle lights according to benchmark intensities of Table 6-1

Benchmark intensity	Minimum requirements					Recommendations				
	Vertical elevation angle (b)			Vertical beam spread (c)		Vertical elevation angle (b)			Vertical beam spread (c)	
	0°		-1°			0°	-1°	-10°		
	Minimum average intensity (a)	Minimum intensity (a)	Minimum intensity (a)	Minimum beam spread	Intensity (a)	Maximum intensity (a)	Maximum intensity (a)	Maximum intensity (a)	Maximum beam spread	Intensity (a)
200 000	200 000	150 000	75 000	3°	75 000	250 000	112 500	7 500	7°	75 000
100 000	100 000	75 000	37 500	3°	37 500	125 000	56 250	3 750	7°	37 500
20 000	20 000	15 000	7 500	3°	7 500	25 000	11 250	750	N/A	N/A
2 000	2 000	1 500	750	3°	750	2 500	1 125	75	N/A	N/A

Note.—This table does not include recommended horizontal beam spreads. 6.2.1.3 requires 360° coverage around an obstacle. Therefore, the number of lights needed to meet this requirement will depend on the horizontal beam spreads of each light as well as the shape of the obstacle. Thus, with narrower beam spreads, more lights will be required.

a) 360° horizontal. All intensities are expressed in Candela. For flashing lights, the intensity is read into effective intensity, as determined in accordance with the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

b) Elevation vertical angles are referenced to the horizontal when the light unit is levelled.

c) Beam spread is defined as the angle between the horizontal plane and the directions for which the intensity exceeds that mentioned in the “intensity” column.

Note.— An extended beam spread may be necessary under specific configuration and justified by an aeronautical study.

Lighting

6.2.2.5 Low-intensity obstacle lights, Type C, shall be displayed on vehicles and other mobile objects excluding aircraft.

Note.— See Annex 2 for lights to be displayed by aircraft.

6.2.2.6 Low-intensity obstacle lights, Type C, displayed on vehicles associated with emergency or security shall be flashing-blue and those displayed on other vehicles shall be flashing-yellow.

6.2.2.7 Low-intensity obstacle lights, Type D, shall be displayed on follow-me vehicles.

6.2.2.8 Low-intensity obstacle lights on objects with limited mobility such as aerobridges shall be fixed-red, and as a minimum be in accordance with the specifications for low-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, in Table 6-1. The intensity of the lights shall be sufficient to ensure conspicuity considering the intensity of the adjacent lights and the general levels of illumination against which they would normally be viewed.

6.2.3 Fixed objects

Note.—The fixed objects of wind turbines are addressed separately in 6.2.4 and the fixed objects of overhead wires, cables, etc., and supporting towers are addressed separately in 6.2.5.

Marking

6.2.3.1 All fixed objects to be marked shall, whenever practicable, be coloured, but if this is not practicable, markers or flags shall be displayed on or above them, except that objects that are sufficiently conspicuous by their shape, size or colour need not be otherwise marked.

Marking by colour

6.2.3.2 An object should be coloured to show a chequered pattern if it has essentially unbroken surfaces and its projection on any vertical plane equals or exceeds 4.5 m in both dimensions. The pattern should consist of rectangles of not less than 1.5 m and not more than 3 m on a side, the corners being of the darker colour. The colours of the pattern should contrast each with the other and with the background against which they will be seen. Orange and white or alternatively red and white should be used, except where such colours merge with the background. (See Figure 6-1.)

6.2.3.3 An object should be coloured to show alternating contrasting bands if:

a) it has essentially unbroken surfaces and has one dimension, horizontal or vertical, greater than 1.5 m, and the other dimension, horizontal or vertical, less than 4.5 m; or

b) it is of skeletal type with either a vertical or a horizontal dimension greater than 1.5 m.

The bands should be perpendicular to the longest dimension and have a width approximately 1/7 of the longest dimension or 30 m, whichever is less. The colours of the bands should contrast with the background against which they will be seen. Orange and white should be used, except where such colours are not conspicuous when viewed against the background. The bands on the extremities of the object should be of the darker colour. (See Figures 6-1 and 6-2.)

Note.— Table 6-4 shows a formula for determining band widths and for having an odd number of bands, thus permitting both the top and bottom bands to be of the darker colour.

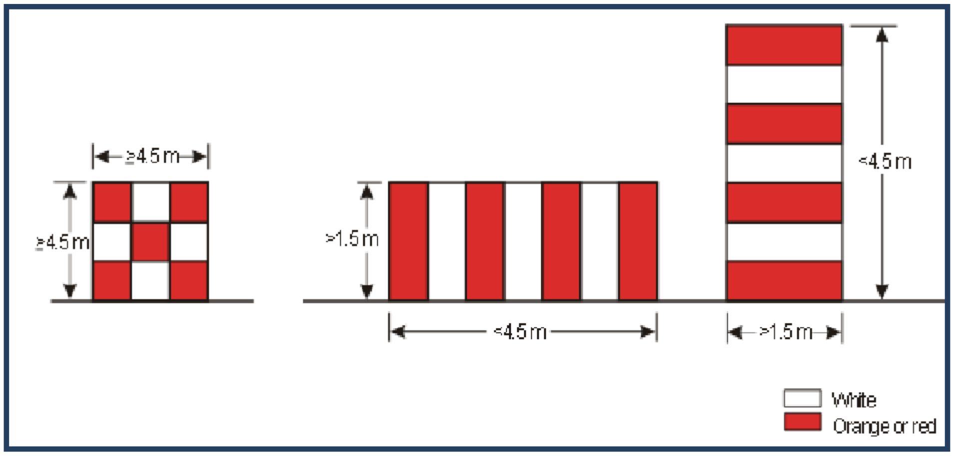


Table 6-4. Marking band widths

Longest dimension		
Greater than	Not exceeding	Band width
1.5 m	210 m	1/7 of longest dimension
210 m	270 m	1/9 " " "
270 m	330 m	1/11 " " "
330 m	390 m	1/13 " " "
390 m	450 m	1/15 " " "
450 m	510 m	1/17 " " "
510 m	570 m	1/19 " " "
570 m	630 m	1/21 " " "

6.2.3.4 An object should be coloured in a single conspicuous colour if its projection on any vertical plane has both dimensions less than 1.5 m. Orange or red should be used, except where such colours merge with the background.

Note — Against some backgrounds it may be found necessary to use a different colour from orange or red to obtain sufficient contrast.

Marking by flags

6.2.3.5 Flags used to mark fixed objects shall be displayed around, on top of, or around the highest edge of, the object. When flags are used to mark extensive objects or groups of closely spaced objects, they shall be displayed at least every 15 m. Flags shall not increase the hazard presented by the object they mark.

6.2.3.6 Flags used to mark fixed objects shall not be less than 0.6 m on each side.

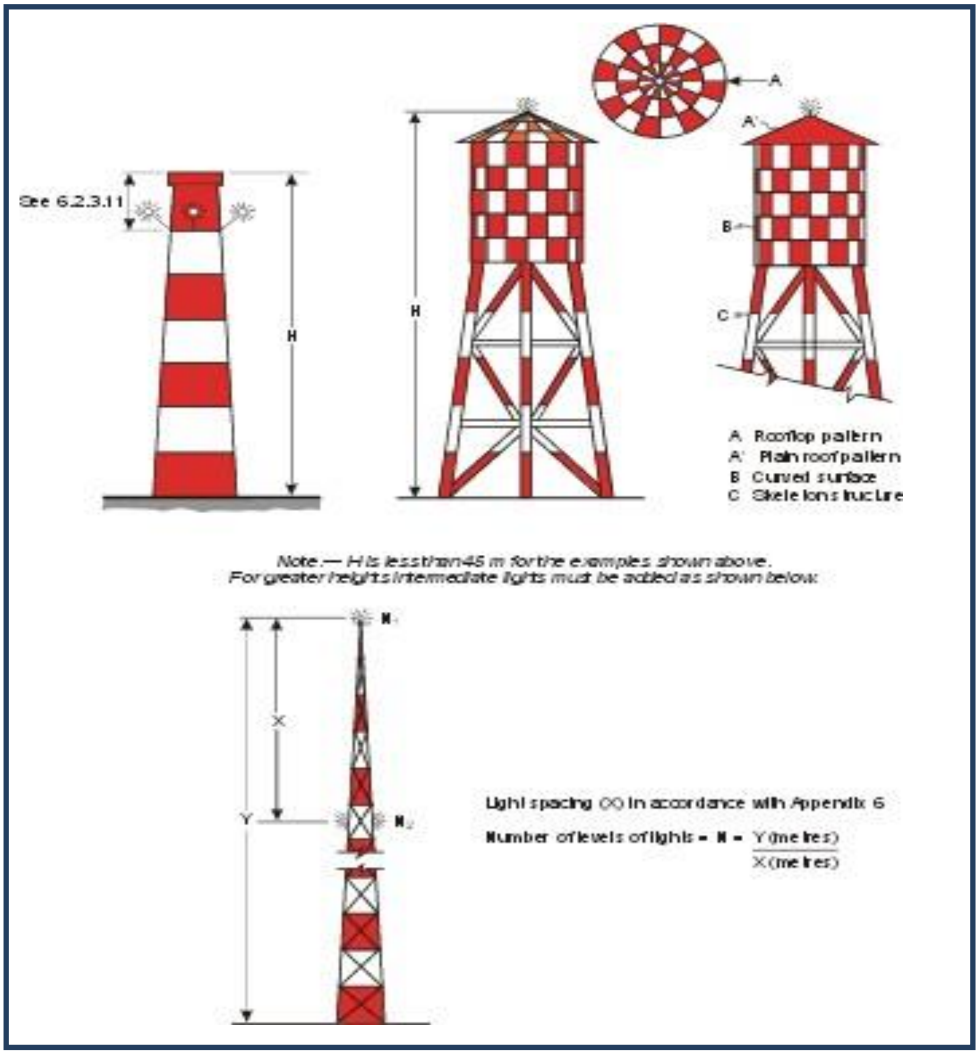


Figure 6-2. Examples of marking and lighting of tall structures

6.2.3.7 Flags used to mark fixed objects should be orange in colour or a combination of two triangular sections, one orange and the other white, or one red and the other white, except that where such colours merge with the background, other conspicuous colours should be used.

Marking by markers

6.2.3.8 Markers displayed on or adjacent to objects shall be located in conspicuous positions so as to retain the general definition of the object and shall be recognizable in clear weather from a distance of at least 1 000 m for an object to be viewed from the air and 300 m for an object to be viewed from the ground in all directions in which an aircraft is likely to approach the object. The shape of markers shall be distinctive to the extent necessary to ensure that they are not mistaken for markers employed to convey other information, and they shall be such that the hazard presented by the object they mark is not increased.

6.2.3.9 A marker should be of one colour. When installed, white and red, or white and orange markers should be displayed alternately. The colour selected should contrast with the background against which it will be seen.

Lighting

6.2.3.10 In the case of an object to be lighted, one or more low-, medium- or high-intensity obstacle lights shall be located as close as practicable to the top of the object.

Note.—Recommendations on how a combination of low-, medium- and/or high-intensity lights on obstacles should be displayed are given in Appendix 6.

6.2.3.11 In the case of chimney or other structure of like function, the top lights should be placed sufficiently below the top so as to minimize contamination by smoke, etc. (See Figure 6-2).

6.2.3.12 In the case of a tower or antenna structure indicated by high-intensity obstacle lights by day with an appurtenance, such as a rod or an antenna, greater than 12 m where it is not practicable to locate a high-intensity obstacle light on the top of the appurtenance, such a light shall be located at the highest practicable point and, if practicable, a medium-intensity obstacle light, Type A, mounted on the top.

6.2.3.13 In the case of an extensive object or of a group of closely spaced objects to be lighted that are:

a) penetrating a horizontal obstacle limitation surface (OLS) or located outside an OLS, the top lights shall be so arranged as to at least indicate the points or edges of the object highest in relation to the obstacle limitation surface or above the ground, and so as to indicate the general definition and the extent of the objects; and

b) penetrating a sloping OLS, the top lights shall be so arranged as to at least indicate the points or edges of the object highest in relation to the OLS, and so as to indicate the general definition and the extent of the objects. If two or more edges are of the same height, the edge nearest the landing area shall be marked.

6.2.3.14 When the obstacle limitation surface concerned is sloping and the highest point above the OLS is not the highest point of the object, additional obstacle lights should be placed on the highest point of the object.

6.2.3.15 Where lights are applied to display the general definition of an extensive object or a group of closely spaced objects, and

a) low-intensity lights are used, they shall be spaced at longitudinal intervals not exceeding 45 m; and

b) medium-intensity lights are used, they shall be spaced at longitudinal intervals not exceeding 900 m.

6.2.3.16 High-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, and medium-intensity obstacle lights, Types A and B, located on an object shall flash simultaneously.

6.2.3.17 The installation setting angles for high-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, should be in accordance with Table 6-5.

Note—High-intensity obstacle lights are intended for day use as well as night use. Care is needed to ensure that these lights do not create disconcerting dazzle. Guidance on the design, location and operation of high-intensity obstacle lights is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

6.2.3.18 Where, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the use of high-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, or medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, at night may dazzle pilots in the vicinity of an aerodrome (within approximately 10 000 m radius) or cause significant environmental concerns, a dual obstacle lighting system should be provided. This system should be composed of high-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, or medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, as appropriate, for daytime and twilight use and medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B or C, for night-time use.

Lighting of objects with a height less than 45 m above ground level

6.2.3.19 Low-intensity obstacle lights, Type A or B, should be used where the object is a less extensive one and its height above the surrounding ground is less than 45 m.

6.2.3.20 Where the use of low-intensity obstacle lights, Type A or B, would be inadequate or an early special warning is required, then medium- or high-intensity obstacle lights should be used.

6.2.3.21 Low-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, should be used either alone or in combination with medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, in accordance with 6.2.3.22.

6.2.3.22 Medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, B or C, should be used where the object is an extensive one. Medium-intensity obstacle lights, Types A and C, should be used alone, whereas medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, should be used either alone or in combination with low-intensity obstacle lights, Type B.

Note.— A group of buildings is regarded as an extensive object.

Lighting of objects with a height 45 m to a height less than 150 m above ground level

6.2.3.23 Medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, B or C, should be used. Medium-intensity obstacle lights, Types A and C, should be used alone, whereas medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, should be used either alone or in combination with low-intensity obstacle lights, Type B.

6.2.3.24 Where an object is indicated by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, and the top of the object is more than 105 m above the level of the surrounding ground or the elevation of tops of nearby buildings (when the object to be marked is surrounded by buildings), additional lights shall be provided at intermediate levels. These additional intermediate lights shall be spaced as equally as practicable, between the top lights and ground level or the level of tops of nearby buildings, as appropriate, with the spacing not exceeding 105 m.

6.2.3.25 Where an object is indicated by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, and the top of the object is more than 45 m above the level of the surrounding ground or the elevation of tops of nearby buildings (when the object to be marked is surrounded by buildings), additional lights shall be provided at intermediate levels. These additional intermediate lights shall be alternately low-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, and medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, and shall be spaced as equally as practicable between the top lights and ground level or the level of tops of nearby buildings, as appropriate, with the spacing not exceeding 52 m.

6.2.3.26 Where an object is indicated by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type C, and the top of the object is more than 45 m above the level of the surrounding ground or the elevation of tops of nearby buildings (when the object to be marked is surrounded by buildings), additional lights shall be provided at intermediate levels. These additional intermediate lights shall be spaced as equally as practicable, between the top lights and ground level or the level of tops of nearby buildings, as appropriate, with the spacing not exceeding 52 m.

6.2.3.27 Where high-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, are used, they shall be spaced at uniform intervals not exceeding 105 m between the ground level and the top light(s) specified in 6.2.3.10, except that where an object to be marked is surrounded by buildings, the elevation of the tops of the buildings may be used as the equivalent of the ground level when determining the number of light levels.

Lighting of objects with a height 150 m or more above ground level

6.2.3.28 High-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, should be used to indicate the presence of an object if its height above the level of the surrounding ground exceeds 150 m and an aeronautical study indicates such lights to be essential for the recognition of the object by day.

6.2.3.29 Where high-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, are used, they shall be spaced at uniform intervals not exceeding 105 m between the ground level and the top light(s) specified in 6.2.3.10, except that where an object to be marked is surrounded by buildings, the elevation of the tops of the buildings may be used as the equivalent of the ground level when determining the number of light levels.

6.2.3.30 Where, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the use of high-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, at night may dazzle pilots in the vicinity of an aerodrome (within approximately 10 000 m radius) or cause significant environmental concerns, medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type C, should be used alone, whereas medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, should be used either alone or in combination with low-intensity obstacle lights, Type B.

6.2.3.31 Where an object is indicated by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type A, additional lights shall be provided at intermediate levels. These additional intermediate lights shall be spaced as equally as practicable, between the top lights and ground level or the level of tops of nearby buildings, as appropriate, with the spacing not exceeding 105 m.

6.2.3.32 Where an object is indicated by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, additional lights shall be provided at intermediate levels. These additional intermediate lights shall be alternately low-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, and medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type

B, and shall be spaced as equally as practicable between the top lights and ground level or the level of tops of nearby buildings, as appropriate, with the spacing not exceeding 52 m.

6.2.3.32 Where an object is indicated by medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type C, additional lights shall be provided at intermediate levels. These additional intermediate lights shall be spaced as equally as practicable, between the top lights and ground level or the level of tops of nearby buildings, as appropriate, with the spacing not exceeding 52 m.

6.2.4 Wind turbines

6.2.4.1 A wind turbine shall be marked and/or lighted if it is determined to be an obstacle.

Note 1.—Additional lighting or markings may be provided where in the opinion of the State such lighting or markings are deemed necessary.

Note 2.— See 4.3.1 and 4.3.2

Markings

6.2.4.2 The rotor blades, nacelle and upper 2/3 of the supporting mast of wind turbines should be painted white, unless otherwise indicated by an aeronautical study.

Lighting

6.2.4.3 When lighting is deemed necessary, in the case of a wind farm, i.e. a group of two or more wind turbines, the wind farm should be regarded as an extensive object and the lights should be installed:

a) to identify the perimeter of the wind farm;

b) respecting the maximum spacing, in accordance with 6.2.3.15, between the lights along the perimeter, unless a dedicated assessment shows that a greater spacing can be used;

c) so that, where flashing lights are used, they flash simultaneously throughout the wind farm;

d) so that, within a wind farm, any wind turbines of significantly higher elevation are also identified wherever they are located; and

e) at locations prescribed in a), b) and d), respecting the following criteria:

i) for wind turbines of less than 150 m in overall height (hub height plus vertical blade height), medium-intensity lighting on the nacelle should be provided;

ii) for wind turbines from 150 m to 315 m in overall height, in addition to the medium-intensity light installed on the nacelle, a second light serving as an alternate should be provided in case of failure of the operating light. The lights should be installed to assure that the output of either light is not blocked by the other; and

iii) in addition, for wind turbines from 150 m to 315 m in overall height, an intermediate level at half the nacelle height of at least three low-intensity Type E lights, as specified in 6.2.1.3, should be provided. If anaeronautical study shows that low-intensity Type E lights are not suitable, low-intensity Type A or B lights may be used.

Note—The above 6.2.4.3 e) does not address wind turbines of more than 315 m of overall height. For such wind turbines, additional marking and lighting may be required as determined by an aeronautical study.

6.2.4.4 The obstacle lights should be installed on the nacelle in such a manner as to provide an unobstructed view for aircraft approaching from any direction.

6.2.4.5 Where lighting is deemed necessary for a single wind turbine or short line of wind turbines, the installation should be in accordance with 6.2.4.3 e) or as determined by an aeronautical study.

6.2.5 Overhead wires, cables, etc., and supporting towers

Marking

6.2.5.1 The wires, cables, etc., to be marked should be equipped with markers; the supporting tower should be coloured.

Marking by colours

6.2.5.2 The supporting towers of overhead wires, cables, etc., that require marking should be marked in accordance with 6.2.3.1 to 6.2.3.4, except that the marking of the supporting towers may be omitted when they are lighted by high-intensity obstacle lights by day.

Marking by markers

6.2.5.3 Markers displayed on or adjacent to objects shall be located in conspicuous positions so as to retain the general definition of the object and shall be recognizable in clear weather from a distance of at least 1 000 m for an object to be viewed from the air and 300 m for an object to be viewed from the ground in all directions in which an aircraft is likely to approach the object. The shape of markers shall be distinctive to the extent necessary to ensure that they are not mistaken for markers employed to convey other information, and they shall be such that the hazard presented by the object they mark is not increased.

6.2.5.4 A marker displayed on an overhead wire, cable, etc., should be spherical and have a diameter of not less than 60 cm.

6.2.5.5 The spacing between two consecutive markers or between a marker and a supporting tower should be appropriate to the diameter of the marker, but in no case should the spacing exceed:

a) 30 m where the marker diameter is 60 cm progressively increasing with the diameter of the marker to

b) 35 m where the marker diameter is 80 cm and further progressively increasing to a maximum of

c) 40 m where the marker diameter is of at least 130 cm.

Where multiple wires, cables, etc., are involved, a marker should be located not lower than the level of the highest wire at the point marked.

6.2.5.6 A marker should be of one colour. When installed, white and red, or white and orange markers should be displayed alternately. The colour selected should contrast with the background against which it will be seen.

6.2.5.7 When it has been determined that an overhead wire, cable, etc., needs to be marked but it is not practicable to install markers on the wire, cable, etc., then high-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, should be provided on their supporting towers.

Lighting

6.2.5.8 High-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, should be used to indicate the presence of a tower supporting overhead wires, cables, etc., where:

a) an aeronautical study indicates such lights to be essential for the recognition of the presence of wires, cables, etc.; or

b) it has not been found practicable to install markers on the wires, cables, etc.

6.2.5.9 Where high-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, are used, they shall be located at three levels:

— at the top of the tower;
— at the lowest level of the catenary of the wires or cables; and
— at approximately midway between these two levels.

Note— In some cases, this may require locating the lights off the tower.

6.2.5.10 High-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, indicating the presence of a tower supporting overhead wires, cables, etc., should flash sequentially; first the middle light, second the top light and last, the bottom light. The intervals between flashes of the lights should approximate the following ratios:

Flash interval between	**Ratio of cycle time**
middle and top light	1/13
top and bottom light	2/13
bottom and middle light	10/13.

Note—High-intensity obstacle lights are intended for day use as well as night use. Care is needed to ensure that these lights do not create disconcerting dazzle. Guidance on the design, operation and the location of high-intensity obstacle lights is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

6.2.5.11 Where, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, the use of high-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, at night may dazzle pilots in the vicinity of an aerodrome (within approximately 10 000 m radius) or cause significant environmental concerns, a dual obstacle lighting system should be provided. This system should be composed of high-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, for daytime and twilight use and medium-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, for night-time use. Where medium-intensity lights are used they should be installed at the same level as the high- intensity obstacle light Type B.

6.2.5.12 The installation setting angles for high-intensity obstacle lights, Type B, should be in accordance with Table 6-5.

Table 6-5. Installation setting angles for high-intensity obstacle lights

Height of light unit above terrain (AGL)		Angle of the peak of the beam above the horizontal
Greater than	Not exceeding	
151 m		0°
122 m	151 m	1°
92 m	122 m	2°
	92 m	3°

CHAPTER 7 VISUAL AIDS FOR DENOTING RESTRICTED USE AREAS

7.1 Closed runways and taxiways, or parts thereof

Application

7.1.1 A closed marking shall be displayed on a runway or taxiway or portion thereof which is permanently closed to the use of all aircraft.

7.1.2 A closed marking should be displayed on a temporarily closed runway or taxiway or portion thereof, except that such marking may be omitted when the closing is of short duration and adequate warning by air traffic services is provided.

Location

7.1.3 On a runway a closed marking shall be placed at each end of the runway, or portion thereof, declared closed, and additional markings shall be so placed that the maximum interval between markings does not exceed 300 m. On a taxiway a closed marking shall be placed at least at each end of the taxiway or portion thereof closed.

Characteristics

7.1.4 The closed marking shall be of the form and proportions as detailed in Figure 7-1, Illustration a), when displayed on a runway, and shall be of the form and proportions as detailed in Figure 7-1, Illustration b), when displayed on a taxiway. The marking shall be white when displayed on a runway and shall be yellow when displayed on a taxiway.

Note.—When an area is temporarily closed, frangible barriers or markings utilizing materials other than paint or other suitable means may be used to identify the closed area.

7.1.5 When a runway or taxiway or portion thereof is permanently closed, all normal runway and taxiway markings shall be obliterated.

7.1.6 In addition to closed markings, when the runway or taxiway or portion thereof closed is intercepted by a usable runway or taxiway which is used at night, unserviceability lights shall be placed across the entrance to the closed area at intervals not exceeding 3 m (see 7.4.4).

7.2 Non-load Bearing surfaces

Application

7.2.1 Shoulders for taxiways, runway turn pads, holding bays and aprons and other non-load-bearing surfaces which cannot readily be distinguished from load-bearing surfaces and which, if used by aircraft, might result in damage to the aircraft shall have the boundary between such areas and the load-bearing surface marked by a taxi side stripe marking.

Note.—The marking of runway sides is specified in 5.2.7.

Location

7.2.2 A taxi side stripe marking should be placed along the edge of the load-bearing pavement, with the outer edge of the marking approximately on the edge of the load-bearing pavement.

Characteristics

7.2.3 A taxi side stripe marking should consist of a pair of solid lines, each 15 cm wide and spaced 15 cm apart and the same colour as the taxiway centre line marking.

Note.— Guidance on providing additional transverse stripes at an intersection or a small area on the apron is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

7.3 Pre-threshold area Application

7.3.1 When the surface before a threshold is paved and exceeds 60 m in length and is not suitable for normal use by aircraft, the entire length before the threshold should be marked with a chevron marking.

Location

7.3.2 A chevron marking should point in the direction of the runway and be placed as shown in Figure 7-2.

Characteristics

7.3.3 A chevron marking should be of conspicuous colour and contrast with the colour used for the runway markings; it should preferably be yellow. It should have an overall width of at least 0.9 m.

7.4 Unserviceable areas Application

7.4.1 Unserviceability markers shall be displayed wherever any portion of a taxiway, apron or holding bay is unfit for the movement of aircraft but it is still possible for aircraft to bypass the area safely. On a movement area used at night, unserviceability lights shall be used.

Note.— Unserviceability markers and lights are used for such purposes as warning pilots of a hole in a taxiway or apron pavement or outlining a portion of pavement, such as on an apron, that is under repair. They are not suitable for use when a portion of a runway becomes unserviceable, nor on a taxiway when a major portion of the width becomes unserviceable. In such instances, the runway or taxiway is normally closed.

Location

7.4.2 Unserviceability markers and lights shall be placed at intervals sufficiently close so as to delineate the unserviceable area.

Note.— Guidance on the location of unserviceability lights is given in Attachment A, Section 14.

Characteristics of unserviceability markers

7.4.3 Unserviceability markers shall consist of conspicuous upstanding devices such as flags, cones or marker boards.

Characteristics of unserviceability lights

7.4.4 An unserviceability light shall consist of a red fixed light. The light shall have an intensity sufficient to ensure conspicuity considering the intensity of the adjacent lights and the general level of illumination against which it would normally be viewed. In no case shall the intensity be less than 10 cd of red light.

Characteristics of unserviceability cones

7.4.5 An unserviceability cone should be at least 0.5 m in height and red, orange or yellow or any one of these colours in combination with white.

Characteristics of unserviceability flags

7.4.6 An unserviceability flag should be at least 0.5 m square and red, orange or yellow or any one of these colours in combination with white.

Characteristics of unserviceability marker boards

7.4.7 An unserviceability marker board should be at least 0.5 m in height and 0.9 m in length, with alternate red and white or orange and white vertical stripes.

CHAPTER 8. ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

8.1 Electrical power supply systems for air navigationfacilities

Introductory Note.— The safety of operations at aerodromes depends on the quality of the supplied power. The total electrical power supply system may include connections to one or more external sources of electric power supply, one or more local generating facilities and to a distribution network including transformers and switchgear. Many other aerodrome facilities supplied from the same system need to be taken into account while planning the electrical power system at aerodromes.

8.1.1 Adequate primary power supply shall be available at aerodromes for the safe functioning of air navigation facilities.

8.1.2 The design and provision of electrical power systems for aerodrome visual and radio navigation aids shall be such that an equipment failure will not leave the pilot with inadequate visual and non-visual guidance or misleading information.

Note.-The design and installation of the electrical systems need to take into consideration factors that can lead to malfunction, such as electromagnetic disturbances, line losses, power quality, etc. Additional guidance is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 5.

8.1.3 Electric power supply connections to those facilities for which secondary power is required should be so arranged that the facilities are automatically connected to the secondary power supply on failure of the primary source of power.

8.1.4 The time interval between failure of the primary source of power and the complete restoration of the services required by 8.1.10 should be as short as practicable,

Note— A definition of switch-over time is given in Chapter 1.

8.1.5 The provision of a definition of switch-over time shall not require the replacement of an existing secondary power supply before 1 January 2010. However, for a secondary power supply installed after 4 November 1999, the electric power supply connections to those facilities for which secondary power is required shall be so arranged that the facilities are capable of meeting the requirements of Table 8-1 for maximum switch-over times as defined in Chapter 1.

Visual aids

Application

8.1.10 The following aerodrome facilities should be provided with a secondary power supply capable of supplying power when there is a failure of the primary power supply;

a) The signaling lamp and the minimum lighting necessary to enable air traffic services personnel to carry out their duties;

Note— The requirement for minimum lighting may be met by other than electrical means.

b) all obstacle lights which, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, are essential to ensure the safe operation of aircraft;

c) meteorological equipment;

d) essential security lighting, if provided in accordance with 9.11;

e) essential equipment and facilities for the aerodrome responding emergency agencies;

f) floodlighting on a designated isolated aircraft parking position if provided in accordance with 5.3.24.1;

g) and illumination of apron areas over which passengers may walk.

Note.— Specifications for secondary power supply for radio navigation aids and ground elements of communications systems are given in Annex 10, Volume I, Chapter 2**.**

8.1.11 Requirements for a secondary power supply should be met by either of the following:

— independent public power, which is a source of power supplying the aerodrome service from a substation other than the normal substation through a transmission line following a route different from the normal power supply route and such that the possibility of a simultaneous failure of the normal and independent public power supplies is extremely remote; or

— standby power unit(s), which are engine generators, batteries, etc., from which electric power can be obtained.

Note.— Guidance on electrical systems is included in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 5.

CHAPTER 9. AERODROME OPERATIONAL SERVICES, EQUIPMENT AND INSTALLATIONS

9.1 Aerodrome emergency planning

General

Introductory Note.— Aerodrome emergency planning is the process of preparing an aerodrome to cope with an emergency occurring at the aerodrome or in its vicinity. The objective of aerodrome emergency planning is to minimize the effects of an emergency, particularly in respect of saving lives and maintaining aircraft operations. The aerodrome emergency plan sets forth the procedures for coordinating the response of different aerodrome agencies (or services) and of those agencies in the surrounding community that could be of assistance in responding to the emergency.

Guidance material to assist the appropriate authority in establishing aerodrome emergency planning is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 7.

9.1.1 An aerodrome emergency plan shall be established at an aerodrome, commensurate with the aircraft operations and other activities conducted at the aerodrome.

9.1.2 The aerodrome emergency plan shall provide for the coordination of the actions to be taken in an emergency occurring at an aerodrome or in its vicinity.

Note 1—Examples of emergencies are: aircraft emergencies, sabotage including bomb threats, unlawfully seized aircraft, dangerous goods occurrences, building fires, natural disaster and public health emergencies.

Note 2— Examples of public health emergencies are increased risk of travellers or cargo spreading a serious communicable disease internationally through air transport and severe outbreak of a communicable disease potentially affecting a large proportion of aerodrome staff.

9.1.3 The plan shall coordinate the response or participation of all existing agencies which, in the opinion of the appropriate authority, could be of assistance in responding to an emergency.

Note 1.— Examples of agencies are:

— on the aerodrome: air traffic control units, rescue and firefighting services, aerodrome administration, medical and ambulance services, aircraft operators, security services, and police;

— off the aerodrome: fire departments, police, health authorities (including medical, ambulance, hospital and public health services), military, and harbour patrol or coast guard.

Note 2.— Public health services include planning to minimize adverse effects to the community from health-related events and deal with population health issues rather than provision of health services to individuals.

9.1.4 The plan should provide for cooperation and coordination with the rescue coordination centre, as necessary.

9.1.5 The aerodrome emergency plan document should include at least the following:

a) types of emergencies planned for;

b) agencies involved in the plan;

c) responsibility and role of each agency, the emergency operations centre and the command post, for each type of emergency;

d) information on names and telephone numbers of offices or people to be contacted in the case of a particular emergency; and

e) a grid map of the aerodrome and its immediate vicinity.

9.1.6 The plan shall observe Human Factors principles to ensure optimum response by all existing agencies participating in emergency operations.

Note.— Guidance material on Human Factors principles can be found in the Human Factors Training Manual (Doc 9683).

Emergency operations centre and command post

9.1.7 A fixed emergency operations centre and a mobile command post should be available for use during an emergency.

9.1.8 The emergency operations centre should be a part of the aerodrome facilities and should be responsible for the overall coordination and general direction of the response to an emergency.

9.1.9 The command post should be a facility capable of being moved rapidly to the site of an emergency, when required, and should undertake the local coordination of those agencies responding to the emergency.

9.1.10 A person should be assigned to assume control of the emergency operations centre and, when appropriate, another person the command post.

Communication system

9.1.11 Adequate communication systems linking the command post and the emergency operations centre with each other and with the participating agencies should be provided in accordance with the plan and consistent with the particular requirements of the aerodrome.

Aerodrome emergency exercise

9.1.12 The plan shall contain procedures for periodic testing of the adequacy of the plan and for reviewing the results in order to improve its effectiveness.

Note.— The plan includes all participating agencies and associated equipment.

9.1.13 The plan shall be tested by conducting:

a) a full-scale aerodrome emergency exercise at intervals not exceeding two years and partial emergency exercises in the intervening year to ensure that any deficiencies found during the full- scale aerodrome emergency exercise have been corrected; or

b) a series of modular tests commencing in the first year and concluding in a full-scale aerodrome emergency exercise at intervals not exceeding three years; and reviewed thereafter, or after an actual emergency, so as to correct any deficiency found during such exercises or actual emergency.

Note 1.— The purpose of a full-scale exercise is to ensure the adequacy of the plan to cope with different types of emergencies. The purpose of a partial exercise is to ensure the adequacy of the response to individual participating agencies and components of the plan, such as the communications system. The purpose of modular tests is to enable concentrated effort on specific components of established emergency plans.

Note 2.— Guidance material on airport emergency planning is available in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 7.

Emergencies in difficult environments

9.1.14 The plan shall include the ready availability of, and coordination with, appropriate specialist rescue services to be able to respond to emergencies where an aerodrome is located close to water and/or swampy areas and where a significant portion of approach or departure operations takes place over these areas.

9.1.15 At those aerodromes located close to water and/or swampy areas, or difficult terrain, the aerodrome emergency plan should include the establishment, testing and assessment at regular intervals of a predetermined response for the specialist rescue services.

9.1.16 An assessment of the approach and departure areas within 1000 m of the runway threshold should be carried out to determine the options available for intervention.

Note.— Guidance material on assessing approach and departure areas within 1000 m of runway thresholds can be found in Chapter 13 of the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2 Rescue and firefighting

General

Introductory Note— The principal objective of a rescue and firefighting service is to save lives in the event of an aircraft accident or incident occurring at, or in the immediate vicinity of, an aerodrome. The rescue and firefighting service is provided to create and maintain survivable conditions, to provide egress routes for occupants and to initiate the rescue of those occupants unable to make their escape without direct aid. The rescue may require the use of equipment and personnel other than those assessed primarily for rescue and firefighting purposes.

The most important factors bearing on effective rescue in a survivable aircraft accident are: the training received, the effectiveness of the equipment and the speed with which personnel and equipment designated for rescue and firefighting purposes can be put into use.

Requirements to combat building and fuel farm fires, or to deal with foaming of runways, are not taken into account.

Application

9.2.1 Rescue and firefighting equipment and services shall be provided at an aerodrome.

Note- Public or private organizations, suitably located and equipped, may be designated to provide the rescue and firefighting service. It is intended that the fire station housing these organizations be normally located on the aerodrome, although an off-aerodrome location is not precluded provided the response time can be met.

9.2.2 Where an aerodrome is located close to water/swampy areas, or difficult terrain, and where a significant portion of approach or departure operations takes place over these areas, specialist rescue services and firefighting equipment appropriate to the hazard and risk shall be available.

Note 1.—Special firefighting equipment need not be provided for water areas; this does not prevent the provision of such equipment if it would be of practical use, such as when the areas concerned include reefs or islands.

Note 2.—The objective is to plan and deploy the necessary life-saving flotation equipment as expeditiously as possible in a number commensurate with the largest aeroplane normally using the aerodrome.

Note 3.— Additional guidance is available in Chapter 13 of the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

Level of protection to be provided

9.2.3 The level of protection provided at an aerodrome for rescue and firefighting shall be appropriate to the aerodrome category determined using the principles in 9.2.5 and 9.2.6, except that, where the number of movements of the aeroplanes in the highest category normally using the aerodrome is less than 700 in the busiest consecutive three months, the level of protection provided shall be not less than one category below the determined category.

Note— Either a take-off or a landing constitutes a movement.

9.2.4 The level of protection provided at an aerodrome for rescue and firefighting should be equal to the aerodrome category determined using the principles in 9.2.5 and 9.2.6.

9.2.5 The aerodrome category shall be determined from Table 9-1 and shall be based on the longest aeroplanes normally using the aerodrome and their fuselage width.

Note—To categorize the aeroplanes using the aerodrome, first evaluate their overall length and second, their fuselage width.

9.2.6 If, after selecting the category appropriate to the longest aeroplane's overall length, that aeroplane's fuselage width is greater than the maximum width in Table 9-1, column 3, for that category, then the category for that aeroplane shall actually be one category higher.

Note 1.— See guidance in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1, for categorizing aerodromes, including those for all-cargo aircraft operations, for rescue and firefighting purposes.
Note 2— Guidance on training of personnel, rescue equipment for difficult environments and other facilities and services for rescue and firefighting is given in Attachment A, Section 18, and in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2.7 During anticipated periods of reduced activity, the level of protection available shall be no less than that needed for the highest category of aeroplane planned to use the aerodrome during that time irrespective of the number of movements.

Table 9-1. Aerodrome category for rescue and firefighting

Aerodrome Category width (1)	**Aeroplane overall length (2)**	**Maximum fuselage (3)**
1	0 m up to but not including 9 m	2 m
2	9 m up to but not including 12 m	2 m
3	12 m up to but not including 18 m	3 m
4	18 m up to but not including 24 m	4 m
5	24 m up to but not including 28 m	4 m
6	28 m up to but not including 39 m	5 m
7	39 m up to but not including 49 m	5 m
8	49 m up to but not including 61 m	7 m
9	61 m up to but not including	76 7 m
10	76 m up to but not including 90 m	8 m

Extinguishing agents

9.2.8 Both principal and complementary agents should normally be provided at an aerodrome.

Note.— Descriptions of the agents may be found in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2.9 The principal extinguishing agent should be:

a) a foam meeting the minimum performance level A; or

b) a foam meeting the minimum performance level B; or

c) a foam meeting the minimum performance level C; or

d) a combination of these agents;

except that the principal extinguishing agent for aerodromes in categories 1 to 3 should preferably meet a performance level B or C foam.

Note.—Information on the required physical properties and fire extinguishing performance criteria needed for a foam to achieve an acceptable performance level A, B or C rating is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2.10 The complementary extinguishing agent should be a dry chemical powder suitable for extinguishing hydrocarbon fires.

Note 1—When selecting dry chemical powders for use with foam, care must be exercised to ensure compatibility.

Note 2— Alternate complementary agents having equivalent firefighting capability may be utilized. Additional information on extinguishing agents is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2.11 The amounts of water for foam production and the complementary agents to be provided on the rescue and firefighting vehicles shall be in accordance with the aerodrome category determined under 9.2.3, 9.2.4, 9.2.5, 9.2.6 and Table 9-2, except that for aerodrome categories 1 and 2 up to 100 per cent of the water may be substituted with complementary agent.

For the purpose of agent substitution, 1 kg of complementary agent shall be taken as equivalent to 1.0 L of water for production of a foam meeting performance level A.

Note 1—The amounts of water specified for foam production are predicated on an application rate of 8.2 L/min/m^2 for a foam meeting performance level A, 5.5 L/min/m^2 for a foam meeting performance level B and 3.75 L/min/m^2 for a foam meeting performance level C.

Note 2— When any other complementary agent is used, the substitution ratios need to be checked.

9.2.12 At aerodromes where operations by aeroplanes larger than the average size in a given category are planned, the quantities of water should be recalculated and the amount of water for foam production and the discharge rates for foam solution should be increased accordingly.

Note.— Guidance on the determination of quantities of water and discharge rates based on the largest theoretical aeroplane in a given category is available in Chapter 2 of the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2.13 From 1 January 2015, at aerodromes where operations by aeroplanes larger than the average size in a given category are planned, the quantities of water shall be recalculated and the amount of water for foam production and the discharge rates for foam solution shall be increased accordingly.

Note.— Guidance on the determination of quantities of water and discharge rates based on the largest overall length of aeroplane in a given category is available in Chapter 2 of the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

Table 9-2. Minimum usable amounts of extinguishing agents

	Foam meeting performance level A		Foam meeting performance level B		Foam meeting performance level C		Complementary agents	
Aerodrome category	Water (L)	Discharge rate foam solution/ minute (L)	Water (L)	Discharge rate foam solution/ minute (L)	Water (L)	Discharge rate foam solution/ minute (L)	Dry chemical powders (kg)	Discharge Rate (kg/second)
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
1	350	350	230	230	160	160	45	2.25
2	1 000	800	670	550	460	360	90	2.25
3	1 800	1 300	1 200	900	820	630	135	2.25
4	3 600	2 600	2 400	1 800	1 700	1 100	135	2.25
5	8 100	4 500	5 400	3 000	3 900	2 200	180	2.25
6	11 800	6 000	7 900	4 000	5 800	2 900	225	2.25
7	18 200	7 900	12 100	5 300	8 800	3 800	225	2.25
8	27 300	10 800	18 200	7 200	12 800	5 100	450	4.5
9	36 400	13 500	24 300	9 000	17 100	6 300	450	4.5
10	48 200	16 600	32 300	11 200	22 800	7 900	450	4.5

Note.— The quantities of water shown in columns 2, 4 and 6 are based on the average overall length of aeroplanes in a given category.

9.2.14 The quantity of foam concentrates separately provided on vehicles for foam production shall be in proportion to the quantity of water provided and the foam concentrate selected.

9.2.15 The amount of foam concentrate provided on a vehicle should be sufficient to produce at least two loads of foam solution.

9.2.16 Supplementary water supplies, for the expeditious replenishment of rescue and firefighting vehicles at the scene of an aircraft accident, should be provided.

9.2.17 When a combination of different performance level foams are provided at an aerodrome, the total amount of water to be provided for foam production should be calculated for each foam type and the distribution of these quantities should be documented for each vehicle and applied to the overall rescue and firefighting requirement.

9.2.18 The discharge rate of the foam solution shall not be less than the rates shown in Table 9-2.

9.2.19 The complementary agents shall comply with the appropriate specifications of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).*

9.2.20 The discharge rate of complementary agents should be no less than the values shown in Table 9-2.

9.2.21 Dry chemical powders should only be substituted with an agent that has equivalent or better firefighting capabilities for all types of fires where complementary agent is expected to be used.

Note.— Guidance on the use of complementary agents can be found in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2.22 A reserve supply of foam concentrate, equivalent to 200 per cent of the quantities identified in Table 9-2, should be maintained on the aerodrome for vehicle replenishment purposes.

Note— Foam concentrate carried on fire vehicles in excess of the quantity identified in Table 9-2 can contribute to the reserve.

9.2.23 A reserve supply of complementary agent, equivalent to 100 per cent of the quantity identified in Table 9-2, should be maintained on the aerodrome for vehicle replenishment purposes. Sufficient propellant gas should be included to utilize this reserve complementary agent.

9.2.24 Category 1 and 2 aerodromes that have replaced up to 100 per cent of the water with complementary agent should hold a reserve supply of complementary agent of 200 per cent.

9.2.25 Where a major delay in the replenishment of the supplies is anticipated, the amount of reserve supply in 9.2.22, 9.2.23 and 9.2.24 should be increased as determined by a risk assessment.

Note.— See the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1 for guidance on the conduct of a risk analysis to determine the quantities of reserve extinguishing agents.

Rescue equipment

9.2.26 Rescue equipment commensurate with the level of aircraft operations should be provided on the rescue and firefighting vehicle(s).

*** See ISO Publication 7202 (Powder).**

Note.— Guidance on the rescue equipment to be provided at an aerodrome is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

Response time

9.2.27 The operational objective of the rescue and firefighting service shall be to achieve a response time not exceeding three minutes to any point of each operational runway, in optimum visibility and surface conditions.

9.2.28 The operational objective of the rescue and firefighting service should be to achieve a response time not exceeding two minutes to any point of each operational runway, in optimum visibility and surface conditions.

9.2.29 The operational objective of the rescue and firefighting service should be to achieve a response time not exceeding three minutes to any other part of the movement area, in optimum visibility and surface conditions.

Note 1.— Response time is considered to be the time between the initial call to the rescue and firefighting service, and the time when the first responding vehicle(s) is (are) in position to apply foam at a rate of at least 50 per cent of the discharge rate specified in Table 9-2.

Note 2.— Optimum visibility and surface conditions are defined as daytime, good visibility, no precipitation with normal response route free of surface contamination, e.g. water, ice or snow.

9.2.30 To meet the operational objective as nearly as possible in less than optimum conditions of visibility, especially during low visibility operations, suitable guidance, equipment and/or procedures for rescue and firefighting services should be provided.

Note— Additional guidance is available in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2.31 Any vehicles, other than the first responding vehicle(s), required to deliver the amounts of extinguishing agents specified in Table 9-2 shall ensure continuous agent application and shall arrive no more than four minutes from the initial call.

9.2.32 Any vehicles, other than the first responding vehicles(s), required to deliver the amounts of extinguishing agents specified in Table 9-2 should ensure continuous agent application and should arrive no more than three minutes from the initial call.

9.2.33 A system of preventive maintenance of rescue and firefighting vehicles should be employed to ensure effectiveness of the equipment and compliance with the specified response time throughout the life of the vehicle.

Emergency access roads

9.2.34 Emergency access roads should be provided on an aerodrome where terrain conditions permit their construction, so as to facilitate achieving minimum response times. Particular attention should be given to the provision of ready access to approach areas up to 1 000 m from the threshold, or at least within the aerodrome boundary. Where a fence is provided, the need for convenient access to outside areas should be taken into account.

Note.— Aerodrome service roads may serve as emergency access roads when they are suitably located and constructed.

9.2.35 Emergency access roads should be capable of supporting the heaviest vehicles which will use them, and be usable in all weather conditions. Roads within 90 m of a runway should be surfaced to prevent surface erosion and the transfer of debris to the runway. Sufficient vertical clearance should be provided from overhead obstructions for the largest vehicles.

9.2.36 When the surface of the road is indistinguishable from the surrounding area, or in areas where snow may obscure the location of the roads, edge markers should be placed at intervals of about 10 m.

Fire stations

9.2.37 All rescue and firefighting vehicles should normally be housed in a fire station. Satellite fire stations should be provided whenever the response time cannot be achieved from a single fire station.

9.2.38 The fire station should be located so that the access for rescue and firefighting vehicles into the runway area is direct and clear, requiring a minimum number of turns.

Communication and alerting systems

9.2.39 A discrete communication system should be provided linking a fire station with the control tower, any other fire station on the aerodrome and the rescue and firefighting vehicles.

9.2.40 An alerting system for rescue and firefighting personnel, capable of being operated from that station, should be provided at a fire station, any other fire station on the aerodrome and the aerodrome control tower.

Number of rescue and firefighting vehicles

9.2.41 The minimum number of rescue and firefighting vehicles provided at an aerodrome should be in accordance with the following tabulation:

Aerodrome category	**Rescue and firefighting vehicles**
1	1
2	1
3	1
4	1
5	1
6	2
7	2
8	3
9	3
10	3

Note.— Guidance on minimum characteristics of rescue and firefighting vehicles is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

Personnel

9.2.42 All rescue and firefighting personnel shall be properly trained to perform their duties in an efficient manner and shall participate in live fire drills commensurate with the types of aircraft and type of rescue and firefighting equipment in use at the aerodrome, including pressure-fed fuel fires.

Note 1.—Guidance to assist the appropriate authority in providing proper training is given in Attachment A, Section 18, and the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

Note 2—Fires associated with fuel discharged under very high pressure from a ruptured fuel tank are known as ―pressure-fed fuel fires‖.

9.2.43 The rescue and firefighting personnel training programme shall include training in human performance, including team coordination.

Note—Guidance material to design training programmes on human performance and team coordination can be found in the Human Factors Training Manual (Doc 9683).

9.2.44 During flight operations, sufficient trained and competent personnel should be designated to be readily available to ride the rescue and firefighting vehicles and to operate the equipment at maximum capacity. These personnel should be deployed in a way that ensures that minimum response times can be achieved and that continuous agent application at the appropriate rate can be fully maintained. Consideration should also be given for personnel to use hand lines, ladders and other rescue and firefighting equipment normally associated with aircraft rescue and firefighting operations.

9.2.45 In determining the minimum number of rescue and firefighting personnel required, a task resource analysis should be completed and the level of staffing documented in the Aerodrome Manual.

Note— Guidance on the use of a task resource analysis can be found in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 1.

9.2.46 All responding rescue and firefighting personnel shall be provided with protective clothing and respiratory equipment to enable them to perform their duties in an effective manner.

9.3 Disabled aircraft removal

Note—Guidance on removal of a disabled aircraft, including recovery equipment, is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 5. See also Annex 13 — Aircraft Accident and Incident Investigation concerning protection of evidence, custody and removal of aircraft.

9.3.1 A plan for the removal of an aircraft disabled on, or adjacent to, the movement area should be established for an aerodrome. The airline operator shall be responsible for removal of the disabled aircraft expeditiously that interfere with the normal activity of an aerodrome. In the event owner of the aircraft fail to remove the disabled aircraft on time, the aerodrome operator shall be cause to remove the disabled aircraft and expenses incurred shall be borne by the aircraft owner.

9.3.2 The disabled aircraft removal plan should be based on the characteristics of the aircraft that may normally be expected to operate at the aerodrome, and include among other things:

a) a list of equipment and personnel on, or in the vicinity of, the aerodrome which would be available for such purpose; and

b) arrangements for the rapid receipt of aircraft recovery equipment kits available from other aerodromes.

9.4 Wildlife strike hazard reduction

Note—The presence of wildlife (birds and animals) on and in the aerodrome vicinity poses a serious threat to aircraft operational safety.

9.4.1 The wildlife strike hazard on, or in the vicinity of, an aerodrome shall be assessed through:

a) the establishment of a national procedure for recording and reporting wildlife strikes to aircraft;

b) the collection of information from aircraft operators, aerodrome personnel and other sources on the presence of wildlife on or around the aerodrome constituting a potential hazard to aircraft operations; and

c) an ongoing evaluation of the wildlife hazard by competent personnel.

Note.— See Annex 15, Chapter 8.

9.4.2 Wildlife strike reports shall be collected and forwarded to ICAO for inclusion in the ICAO Bird Strike Information System (IBIS) database.

Note.—The IBIS is designed to collect and disseminate information on wildlife strikes to aircraft. Information on the system is included in the Manual on the ICAO Bird Strike Information System (IBIS) (Doc 9332).

9.4.3 Action shall be taken to decrease the risk to aircraft operations by adopting measures to minimize the likelihood of collisions between wildlife and aircraft.

Note.— Guidance on effective measures for establishing whether or not wildlife, on or near an aerodrome, constitute a potential hazard to aircraft operations, and on methods for discouraging their presence, is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 3.

9.4.4 The appropriate authority shall take action to eliminate or to prevent the establishment of garbage disposal dumps or any other source which may attract wildlife to the aerodrome, or its vicinity, unless an appropriate wildlife assessment indicates that they are unlikely to create conditions conducive to a wildlife hazard problem. Where the elimination of existing sites is not possible, the appropriate authority shall ensure that any risk to aircraft posed by these sites is assessed and reduced to as low as reasonably practicable.

9.4.5 States should give due consideration to aviation safety concerns related to land developments in the vicinity of the aerodrome that may attract wildlife.

9.5 Apron management service

9.5.1 When warranted by the volume of traffic and operating conditions, an appropriate apron management service should be provided on an apron by an aerodrome ATS unit, by another aerodrome operating authority, or by a cooperative combination of these, in order to:

a) regulate movement with the objective of preventing collisions between aircraft, and between aircraft and obstacles;

b) regulate entry of aircraft into, and coordinate exit of aircraft from, the apron with the aerodrome control tower; and

c) ensure safe and expeditious movement of vehicles and appropriate regulation of other activities.

9.5.2 When the aerodrome control tower does not participate in the apron management service, procedures should be established to facilitate the orderly transition of aircraft between the apron management unit and the aerodrome control tower.

Note.—Guidance on an apron management service is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 8, and in the Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS) (Doc 9476).

9.5.3 An apron management service shall be provided with radiotelephony communications facilities.

9.5.4 Where low visibility procedures are in effect, persons and vehicles operating on an apron shall be restricted to the essential minimum.

Note.—Guidance on related special procedures is given in the Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS) (Doc 9476).

9.5.5 An emergency vehicle responding to an emergency shall be given priority over all other surface movement traffic.

9.5.6 A vehicle operating on an apron shall:

a) give way to an emergency vehicle; an aircraft taxiing, about to taxi, or being pushed or towed; and
b) give way to other vehicles in accordance with local regulations.

9.5.7 An aircraft stand shall be visually monitored to ensure that the recommended clearance distances are provided to an aircraft using the stand.

9.6 Ground servicing of aircraft

9.6.1 Fire extinguishing equipment suitable for at least initial intervention in the event of a fuel fire and personnel trained in its use shall be readily available during the ground servicing of an aircraft, and there shall be a means of quickly summoning the rescue and firefighting service in the event of a fire or major fuel spill.

9.6.2 When aircraft refuelling operations take place while passengers are embarking, on board or disembarking, ground equipment shall be positioned so as to allow:

a) the use of a sufficient number of exits for expeditious evacuation; and

b) a ready escape route from each of the exits to be used in an emergency.

9.7 Aerodrome vehicle operations

Note 1.— Guidance on aerodrome vehicle operations is contained in Attachment A, Section 19, and on traffic rules and regulations for vehicles in the Manual of Surface Movement

Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS) (Doc 9476).

Note 2.— It is intended that roads located on the movement area be restricted to the exclusive use of aerodrome personnel and other authorized persons, and that access to the public buildings by an unauthorized person will not require use of such roads.

9.7.1 A vehicle shall be operated:

a) on a maneuvering area only as authorized by the aerodrome control tower; and

b) on an apron only as authorized by the appropriate designated authority.

9.7.2 The driver of a vehicle on the movement area shall comply with all mandatory instructions conveyed by markings and signs unless otherwise authorized by:

a) the aerodrome control tower when on the manoeuvring area; or
b) the appropriate designated authority when on the apron.

9.7.3 The driver of a vehicle on the movement area shall comply with all mandatory instructions conveyed by lights.

9.7.4 The driver of a vehicle on the movement area shall be appropriately trained for the tasks to be performed and shall comply with the instructions issued by:

a) the aerodrome control tower, when on the manoeuvring area; and

b) the appropriate designated authority, when on the apron.

9.7.5 The driver of a radio-equipped vehicle shall establish satisfactory two-way radio communication with the aerodrome control tower before entering the manoeuvring area and with the appropriate designated authority before entering the apron. The driver shall maintain a continuous listening watch on the assigned frequency when on the movement area.

9.8 Surface movement guidance and control systems Application

9.8.1 A surface movement guidance and control system (SMGCS) shall be provided at an aerodrome.

Note.— Guidance on surface movement guidance and control systems is contained in the Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS) (Doc 9476).

Characteristics

9.8.2 The design of an SMGCS should take into account:

a) the density of air traffic;

b) the visibility conditions under which operations are intended;

c) the need for pilot orientation;

d) the complexity of the aerodrome layout; and

e) movements of vehicles.

9.8.3 The visual aid components of an SMGCS, i.e. markings, lights and signs, should be designed to conform with the relevant specifications in 5.2, 5.3 and 5.4, respectively.

9.8.4 An SMGCS should be designed to assist in the prevention of inadvertent incursions of aircraft and vehicles onto an active runway.

9.8.5 The system should be designed to assist in the prevention of collisions between aircraft, and between aircraft and vehicles or objects, on any part of the movement area.

Note.— Guidance on control of stop bars through induction loops and on a visual taxiing guidance and control system is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

9.8.6 Where an SMGCS is provided by selective switching of stop bars and taxiway centre line lights, the following requirements shall be met:

a) taxiway routes which are indicated by illuminated taxiway centre line lights shall be capable of being terminated by an illuminated stop bar;

b) the control circuits shall be so arranged that when a stop bar located ahead of an aircraft is illuminated, the appropriate section of taxiway centre line lights beyond it is suppressed; and

c) the taxiway centre line lights are activated ahead of an aircraft when the stop bar is suppressed.

Note 1—See Sections 5.3.17 and 5.3.20 for specifications on taxiway centre line lights and stop bars, respectively.

Note 2.—Guidance on installation of stop bars and taxiway centre line lights in SMGCSs is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

9.8.7 Surface movement radar for the manoeuvring area should be provided at an aerodrome intended for use in runway visual range conditions less than a value of 350 m.

9.8.8 Surface movement radar for the manoeuvring area should be provided at an aerodrome other than that in 9.8.7 when traffic density and operating conditions are such that regularity of traffic flow cannot be maintained by alternative procedures and facilities.

Note.— Guidance on the use of surface movement radar is given in the Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS) (Doc 9476) and in the Air Traffic Services Planning Manual (Doc 9426).

9.9 Siting of equipment and installations on operational areas

Note 1— Requirements for obstacle limitation surfaces are specified in 4.2.

Note 2—The design of light fixtures and their supporting structures, light units of visual approach slope indicators, signs, and markers, is specified in 5.3.1, 5.3.5, 5.4.1 and 5.5.1, respectively. Guidance on the frangible design of visual and non-visual aids for navigation is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 6.

9.9.1 Unless its function requires it to be there for air navigation or for aircraft safety purposes, no equipment or installation shall be:

a) on a runway strip, a runway end safety area, a taxiway strip or within the distances specified in Table 3-1, column 11, if it would endanger an aircraft; or

b) on a clearway if it would endanger an aircraft in the air.

9.9.2 Any equipment or installation required for air navigation or for aircraft safety purposes which must be located:

a) on that portion of a runway strip within:

1)75 m of the runway centre line where the code number is 3 or 4; or

2)45 m of the runway centre line where the code number is 1 or 2; or

b) on a runway end safety area, a taxiway strip or within the distances specified in Table 3-1; or

c) on a clearway and which would endanger an aircraft in the air; shall be frangible and mounted as low as possible.

9.9.3 Any equipment or installation required for air navigation or for aircraft safety purposes which must be located on the non-graded portion of a runway strip should be regarded as an obstacle and should be frangible and mounted as low as possible.

Note.— Guidance on the sitting of navigation aids is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 6.

9.9.4 Unless its function requires it to be there for air navigation or for aircraft safety purposes, no equipment or installation shall be located within 240 m from the end of the strip and within:

a) 60 m of the extended centre line where the code number is 3 or 4; or

b) 45 m of the extended centre line where the code number is 1 or 2;of a precision approach runway category I, II or III.

9.9.5 Any equipment or installation required for air navigation or for aircraft safety purposes which must be located on or near a strip of a precision approach runway category I, II or III and which:

a) is situated on that portion of the strip within 77.5 m of the runway centre line where the code number is 4 and the code letter is F; or

b) is situated within 240 m from the end of the strip and within;

1) 60 m of the extended runway centre line where the code number is 3 or 4; or

2) 45 m of the extended runway centre line where the code number is 1 or 2; or

c) penetrates the inner approach surface, the inner transitional surface or the balked landing surface; shall be frangible and mounted as low as possible.

9.9.6 Any equipment or installation required for air navigation or for aircraft safety purposes which is an obstacle of operational significance in accordance with 4.2.4, 4.2.11, 4.2.20 or 4.2.27 should be frangible and mounted as low as possible.

9.10 Fencing Application

9.10.1 A fence or other suitable barrier shall be provided on an aerodrome to prevent the entrance to the movement area of animals large enough to be a hazard to aircraft.

9.10.2 A fence or other suitable barrier shall be provided on an aerodrome to deter the inadvertent or premeditated access of an unauthorized person onto a non-public area of the aerodrome.

Note 1— This is intended to include the barring of sewers, ducts, tunnels, etc., where necessary to prevent access.

Note 2.—Special measures may be required to prevent the access of an unauthorized person to runways or taxiways which overpass public roads.

9.10.3 Suitable means of protection shall be provided to deter the inadvertent or premeditated access of unauthorized persons into ground installations and facilities essential for the safety of civil aviation located off the aerodrome.

Location

9.10.4 The fence or barrier shall be located so as to separate the movement area and other facilities or zones on the aerodrome vital to the safe operation of aircraft from areas open to public access.

9.10.5 When greater security is thought necessary, a cleared area should be provided on both sides of the fence or barrier to facilitate the work of patrols and to make trespassing more difficult. Consideration should be given to the provision of a perimeter road inside the aerodrome fencing for the use of both maintenance personnel and security patrols.

9.11 Security lighting

At an aerodrome where it is deemed desirable for security reasons, a fence or other barrier provided for the protection of international civil aviation and its facilities should be illuminated at a minimum essential level. Consideration should be given to locating lights so that the ground area on both sides of the fence or barrier, particularly at access points, is illuminated.

9.12 Autonomous runway incursion warning system

Note 1.— The inclusion of detailed specifications for an autonomous runway incursion warning system (ARIWS) in this section is not intended to imply that an ARIWS has to be provided at an aerodrome.

Note 2.— The implementation of an ARIWS is a complex issue deserving careful consideration by aerodrome operators, air traffic services and States, and in coordination with the aircraft operators.

Note 3— Attachment A, Section 21, provides a description of an ARIWS and information on its use.

Characteristics

9.12.1 Where an ARIWS is installed at an aerodrome:

a) it shall provide autonomous detection of a potential incursion or of the occupancy of an active runway and a direct warning to a flight crew or vehicle operator;

b) it shall function and be controlled independently of any other visual system on the aerodrome;

c) its visual aid components, i.e. lights, shall be designed to conform with the relevant specifications in 5.3; and

d) failure of part or all of it shall not interfere with normal aerodrome operations. To this end, provision shall be made to allow the ATC unit to partially or entirely shut down the system.

Note 1—An ARIWS may be installed in conjunction with enhanced taxiway centre line markings, stop bars or runway guard lights.

Note 2— It is intended that the system(s) be operational under all weather conditions, including low visibility.

Note 3—An ARIWS may share common sensory components of an SMGCS or A-SMGCS, however, it operates independently of either system.

9.12.2 Where an ARIWS is installed at an aerodrome, information on its characteristics and status shall be provided to the appropriate aeronautical information services for promulgation in the AIP with the description of the aerodrome surface movement guidance and control system and markings as specified in Annex 15, Appendix 1, AD 2.9.

CHAPTER 10 AERODROME MAINTENANCE

10.1 General

10.1.1 A maintenance programme, including preventive maintenance where appropriate, shall be established at an aerodrome to maintain facilities in a condition which does not impair the safety, regularity or efficiency of air navigation.

Note 1—Preventive maintenance is programmed maintenance work done in order to prevent a failure or degradation of facilities.

Note 2— ―Facilities‖ are intended to include such items as pavements, visual aids, fencing, drainage systems, electrical systems and buildings.

10.1.2 The design and application of the maintenance programme should observe Human Factors principles.

Note.— Guidance material on Human Factors principles can be found in the Human Factors Training Manual (Doc 9683) and in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 8.

10.2 Pavements

10.2.1 The surfaces of all movement areas including pavements (runways, taxiways and aprons) and adjacent areas shall be inspected and their conditions monitored regularly as part of an aerodrome preventive and corrective maintenance programme with the objective of avoiding and eliminating any foreign object debris (FOD) that might cause damage to aircraft or impair the operation of aircraft systems.

Note 1— See 2.9.3 for inspections of movement areas.

Note 2— Procedures on carrying out daily inspections of the movement area and control of FOD are given in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981), the Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS) (Doc 9476) and the Advanced Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (A-SMGCS) Manual (Doc 9830).

Note 3— Additional guidance on sweeping/cleaning of surfaces is contained in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 9.

Note 4—Guidance on precautions to be taken in regard to the surface of shoulders is given in Attachment A, Section 9, and the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

Note 5—Where the pavement is used by large aircraft or aircraft with tire pressures in the upper categories referred to in 2.6.6 c), particular attention should be given to the integrity of light fittings in the pavement and pavement joints.

10.2.2 The surface of a runway shall be maintained in a condition such as to prevent formation of harmful irregularities.

Note.— See Attachment A, Section 5.

10.2.3 A paved runway shall be maintained in a condition so as to provide surface friction characteristics at or above the minimum friction level specified by the State.

Note.—The Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2, contains further information on this subject, on improving surface friction characteristics of runways.

10.2.4 Runway surface friction characteristics for maintenance purposes shall be periodically measured with a continuous friction measuring device using self-wetting features and documented. The frequency of these measurements shall be sufficient to determine the trend of the surface friction characteristics of the runway.

Note 1—Guidance on evaluating the friction characteristics of a runway is provided in Attachment A, Section 7. Additional guidance is included in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2.

Note 2—The objective of 10.2.3 to 10.2.6 is to ensure that the surface friction characteristics for the entire runway remain at or above a minimum friction level specified by the State.

Note 3.—Guidance for the determination of the required frequency is provided in Attachment A, Section 7 and in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2, Appendix 5.

10.2.5 When runway surface friction measurement are made for maintenance purposes using a self-wetting continuous friction measuring device, the performance of then device shall meet the standard set or agreed by the state.

10.2.6 Personnel measuring surface friction required by 10.2.5 shall be trained to fulfill their duties.

10.2.7 Corrective maintenance action shall be taken to prevent the runway surface friction characteristics for either the entire runway or a portion thereof from falling below a minimum friction level specified by the State.

Note.—A portion of runway in the order of 100 m long may be considered significant for maintenance or reporting action.

10.2.8 When there is reason to believe that the drainage characteristics of a runway, or portions thereof, are poor due to slopes or depressions, then the runway surface friction characteristics should be assessed under natural or simulated conditions that are representative of local rain, and corrective maintenance action should be taken as necessary.

10.2.9 When a taxiway is used by turbine-engined aeroplanes, the surface of the taxiway shoulders should be maintained so as to be free of any loose stones or other objects that could be ingested by the aeroplane engines.

Note.— Guidance on this subject is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

10.3 Removal of contaminants

10.3.1 Snow, slush, ice, standing water, mud, dust, sand, oil, rubber deposits and other contaminants shall be removed from the surface of runways in use as rapidly and completely as possible to minimize accumulation.

Note.— The above requirement does not imply that winter operations on compacted snow and ice are prohibited. Guidance on snow removal and ice control and removal of other contaminants is given in the Aerodrome Services Manual (Doc 9137), Parts 2 and 9.

10.3.2 Taxiways should be kept clear of snow, slush, ice, etc., to the extent necessary to enable aircraft to be taxied to and from an operational runway.

10.3.3 Aprons should be kept clear of snow, slush, ice, etc., to the extent necessary to enable aircraft to manoeuvre safely or, where appropriate, to be towed or pushed.

10.3.4 Whenever the clearance of snow, slush, ice, etc., from the various parts of the movement area cannot be carried out simultaneously, the order of priority after the runway(s) in use should be set in consultation with the affected parties such as rescue and firefighting service and documented in a snow plan.

Note 1—See Annex 15, Appendix 1, Part 3, AD 1.2.2 for information to be promulgated in an AIP concerning a snow plan. The Aeronautical Information Services Manual (Doc 8126), Chapter 5 contains guidance on the description of a snow plan including general policy concerning operational priorities established for the clearance of movement areas.

Note 2— The Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 8, Chapter 6, specifies that an aerodrome snow plan clearly defines, inter alia, the priority of surfaces to be cleared.

10.3.5 Chemicals to remove or to prevent the formation of ice and frost on aerodrome pavements should be used when conditions indicate their use could be effective. Caution should be exercised in the application of the chemicals so as not to create a more slippery condition.

Note.— Guidance on the use of chemicals for aerodrome pavements is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2. And PANS-Aerodromes Doc 9981.

10.3.6 Chemicals which may have harmful effects on aircraft or pavements, or chemicals which may have toxic effects on the aerodrome environment, shall not be used.

10.4 Runway pavement overlays

Note.—The following specifications are intended for runway pavement overlay projects when the runway is to be returned temporarily to an operational status before resurfacing is complete. This may necessitate a temporary ramp between the new and old runway surfaces. Guidance on overlaying pavements and assessing their operational status is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3.

10.4.1 The longitudinal slope of the temporary ramp, measured with reference to the existing runway surface or previous overlay course, shall be:

a) 0.5 to 1.0 per cent for overlays up to and including 5 cm in thickness; and

b) not more than 0.5 per cent for overlays more than 5 cm in thickness.

10.4.2 Overlaying should proceed from one end of the runway toward the other end so that based on runway utilization most aircraft operations will experience a down ramp.

10.4.3 The entire width of the runway should be overlaid during each work session.

10.4.4 Before a runway being overlaid is returned to a temporary operational status, a runway centre line marking conforming to the specifications in Section 5.2.3 shall be provided. Additionally, the location of any temporary threshold shall be identified by a 3.6 m wide transverse stripe.

10.4.5 The overlay should be constructed and maintained above the minimum friction level specified in 10.2.3.

10.5 Visual aids

Note 1.—These specifications are intended to define the maintenance performance level objectives.They are not intended to define whether the lighting system is operationally out of service.

Note 2.— The energy savings of light emitting diodes (LEDs) are due in large part to the fact that they do not produce the infra-red heat signature of incandescent lamps. Aerodrome operators who have come to expect the melting of ice and snow by this heat signature may wish to evaluate whether or not a modified maintenance schedule is required during such conditions, or evaluate the possible operational value of installing LED fixtures with heating elements.

Note 3—Enhanced vision systems (EVS) technology relies on the infra-red heat signature provided by incandescent lighting. Annex 15 protocols provide an appropriate means of notifying aerodrome users of EVS when lighting systems are converted to LED.

10.5.1 A light shall be deemed to be unserviceable when the main beam average intensity is less than 50 per cent of the value specified in the appropriate figure in Appendix 2. For light units where the designed main beam average intensity is above the value shown in Appendix 2, the 50 per cent value shall be related to that design value.

10.5.2 A system of preventive maintenance of visual aids shall be employed to ensure lighting and marking system reliability.

Note.— Guidance on preventive maintenance of visual aids is given in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 9.

APPENDIX 1. COLOURS FOR MARKINGS, SIGNS AND PANELS

Colours for markings, signs and panels

Note 1—The specifications of surface colours given below apply only to freshly coloured surfaces. Colours used for markings, signs and panels usually change with time and therefore require renewal.

Note 2—Guidance on surface colours is contained in the CIE document entitled Recommendations for Surface Colours for Visual Signaling— Publication No. 39-2 (TC-106) 1983.

Note 3—The specifications recommended in 3.4 for trans illuminated panels are interim in nature and are based on the CIE specifications for trans illuminated signs. It is intended that these specifications will be reviewed and updated as and when CIE develops specifications for trans illuminated panels.

3.1 The chromaticities and luminance factors of ordinary colours, colours of retroreflective materials and colours of trans illuminated (internally illuminated) signs and panels shall be determined under the following standard conditions:

a) angle of illumination: 45°;
b) direction of view: perpendicular to surface; and
c) illuminant: CIE standard illuminant D65.

3.2 The chromaticity and luminance factors of ordinary colours for markings and externally illuminated signs and panels should be within the following boundaries when determined under standard conditions.

CIE Equations (see Figure A1-2):

a) Red
Purple boundary y = 0.345 – 0.051x
White boundary y = 0.910 – x
Orange boundary y = 0.314 + 0.047x
Luminance factor ß = 0.07 (mnm)

b) Orange
Red boundary y = 0.285 + 0.100x
White boundary y = 0.940 – x

d) White
Purple boundary y = 0.010 + x
Blue boundary y = 0.610 – x
Yellow boundary y = 0.250 + 0.220x
Luminance factor ß = 0.20 (mnm)

c) Yellow
Orange boundary y = 0.108 + 0.707x
White boundary y = 0.910 – x
Green boundary y = 1.35x – 0.093
Luminance factor ß = 0.45 (mnm)
Green boundary y = 0.030 + x
Yellow boundary y = 0.710 – x
Luminance factor ß = 0.75 (mnm)

e) Black
Purple boundary y = x – 0.030
Blue boundary y = 0.570 – x
Green boundary y = 0.050 + x
Yellow boundary y = 0.740 – x
Luminance factor ß = 0.03 (max)

f) Yellowish green
Green boundary y = 1.317x + 0.4
White boundary y = 0.910 – x
Yellow boundary y = 0.867x + 0.4
g) Green
Yellow boundary x = 0.313
White boundary y = 0.243 + 0.670x
Blue boundary y = 0.493 – 0.524x
Luminance factor β = 0.10 (mnm)

Note—The small separation between surface red and surface orange is not sufficient to ensure the distinction of these colours when seen separately.

3.3 The chromaticity and luminance factors of colours of retroreflective materials for markings, signs and panels should be within the following boundaries when determined under standard conditions.

CIE Equations (see Figure A1-3):
a) Red
Purple boundary y = 0.345 – 0.051x
White boundary y = 0.910 – x
Orange boundary y = 0.314 + 0.047x
Luminance factor ß = 0.03 (mnm)
b) Orange
Red boundary y = 0.265 + 0.205x
White boundary y = 0.910 – x
Yellow boundary y = 0.207 + 0.390x
Luminance factor ß = 0.14 (mnm)
c) Yellow
Orange boundary y = 0.160 + 0.540x
White boundary y = 0.910 – x
Green boundary y = 1.35x – 0.093
Luminance factor ß = 0.16 (mnm)
d) White
Purple boundary y = x
Blue boundary y = 0.610 – x
Green boundary y = 0.040 + x
Yellow boundary y = 0.710 – x
Luminance factor ß = 0.27 (mnm)
e) Blue
Green boundary y = 0.118 +0.675x
White boundaryy = 0.370 – x
Purple boundary y = 1.65x –0.187
Luminance factor ß = 0.01 (mnm)

f) Green
Yellow boundary y = 0.711 – 1.22x
White boundary y = 0.243 + 0.670x
Blue boundary y = 0.405 – 0.243x
Luminance factor ß = 0.03 (mnm)

3.4 The chromaticity and luminance factors of colours for luminescent or transilluminated (internally illuminated) signs and panels should be within the following boundaries when determined under standard conditions.
CIE Equations (see Figure A1-4):

a) Red
Purple boundary y = 0.345 – 0.051x
White boundary y = 0.910 – x
Orange boundary y = 0.314 + 0.047x
Luminance factor ß = 0.07 (mnm) (day condition)
Relative luminance 5% (mnm) to white (night 20% (max) condition)

b) Yellow
Orange boundary y = 0.108 + 0.707x
White boundary y = 0.910 – x
Green boundary y = 1.35x – 0.093
Luminance factor ß = 0.45 (mnm) (day condition)
Relative luminance 30% (mnm) to white (night 80% (max) condition)

c) White
Purple boundary y = 0.010 + x
Blue boundary y = 0.610 – x
Green boundary y = 0.030 + x
Yellow boundary y = 0.710 – x
Luminance factor ß = 0.75 (mnm) (day
(night 30% (maximum) conditions)

condition)
Relative luminance 100% to white (night condition)

d) Black
Purple boundary y = x – 0.030
Blue boundary y = 0.570 – x
Green boundary y = 0.050 + x
Yellow boundary y = 0.740 – x
Luminance factor ß = 0.03 (max) (day condition)
Relative luminance 0% (mnm) to white (night 2% (max) condition)

e) Green
Yellow boundary : x = 0.313
White boundary: y = 0.243 + 0.670x Blue boundary: y = 0.493 – 0.524x
Luminance factor: β = 0.10 minimum (day conditions)
Relative luminance: 5% (minimum) to white

APPENDIX 2. MANDATORY INSTRUCTION MARKINGS AND INFORMATION

MARKINGS

Note 1— See Chapter 5, Sections 5.2.16 and 5.2.17, for specifications on the application, location and characteristics of mandatory instruction markings and information markings.

Note 2—This appendix details the form and proportions of the letters, numbers and symbols of mandatory instruction markings and information markings on a grid.

Note 3—The mandatory instruction markings and information markings on pavements are formed as if shadowed (i.e., stretched) from the characters of an equivalent elevated sign by a factor of 2.5 as shown in Figure A3-1. The shadowing, however, only affects the vertical dimension. Therefore, the spacing of characters for pavement marking is obtained by first determining the equivalent elevated sign character height and then proportioning from the spacing values given in Table A4-1.

For example, in the case of the runway designator ―10‖ which is to have a height of 4 000 mm (Hps), the equivalent elevated sign character height is 4 000/2.5=1 600 mm (Hes). Table A4-1(b) indicates numeral to numeral code 1 and from Table A4-1(c) this code has a dimension of 96 mm, for a character height of 400 mm. The pavement marking spacing for ―10‖ is then (1 600/400)*96=384 mm.

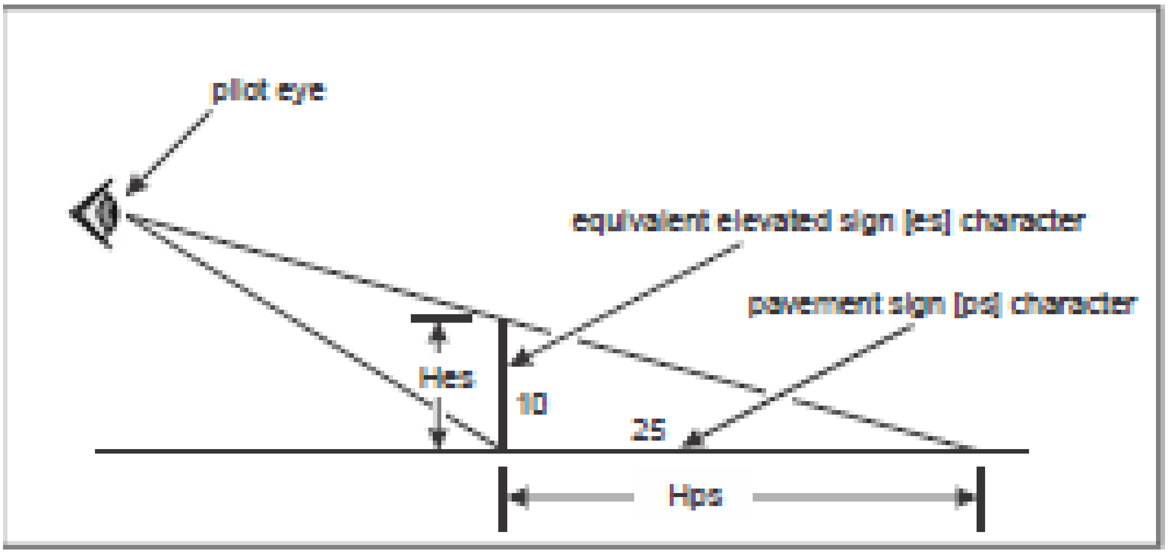
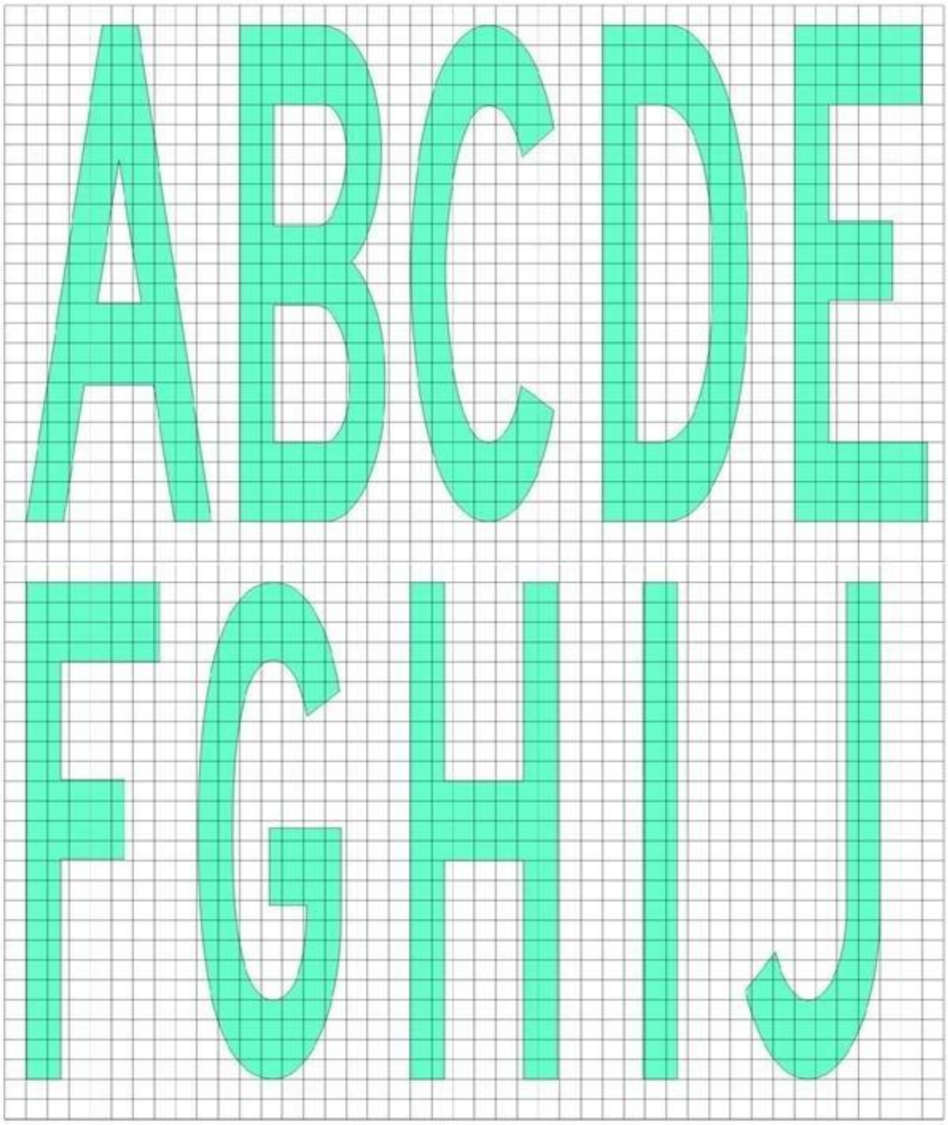
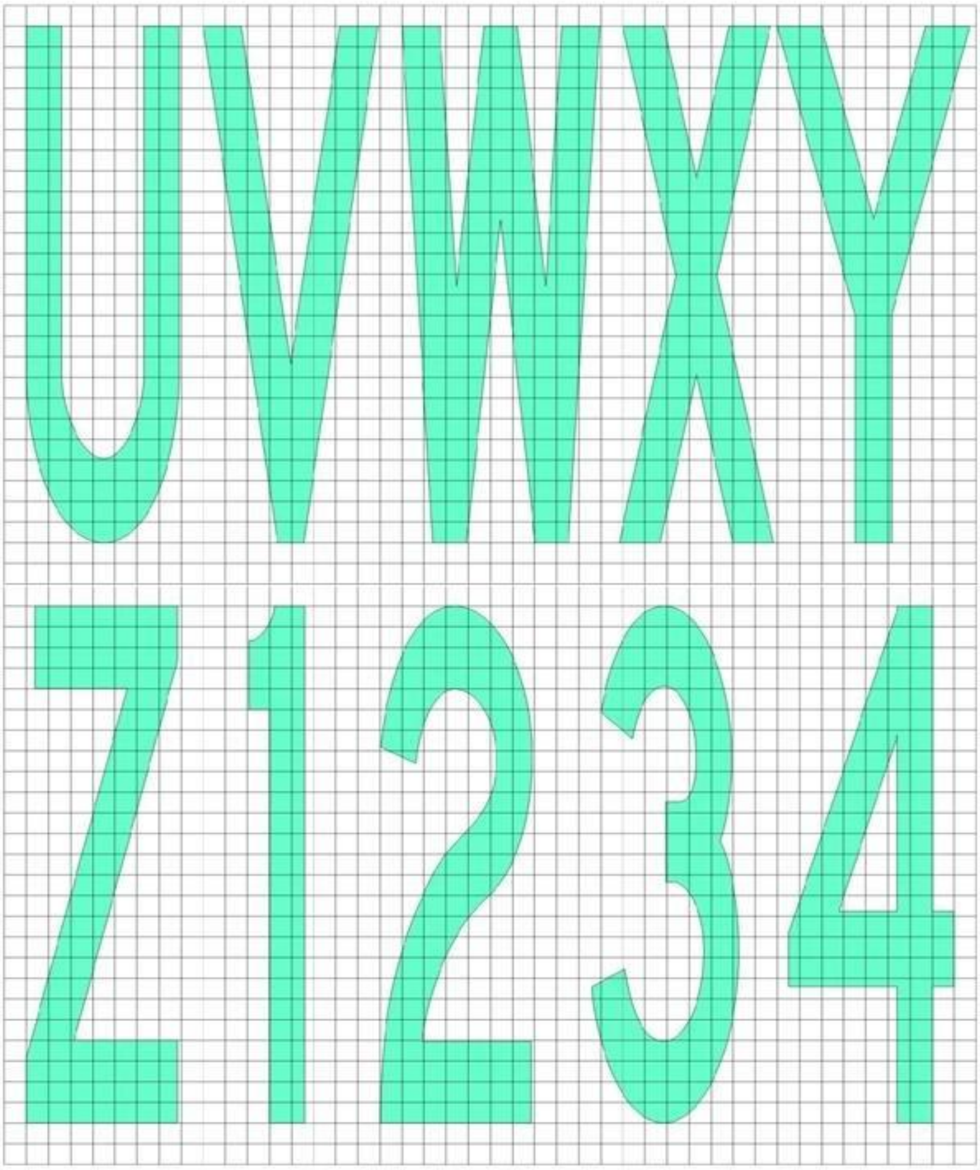


Figure A3-1



ABCDE
FGHIJ


KLMNO
PQRST




5
6
7
8
9
0

APPENDIX 3. REQUIREMENTS CONCERNING DESIGN OF TAXIING GUIDANCE SIGNS

Note. — See Chapter 5, Section 5.4, for specifications on the application, location and characteristics of signs.

1. Inscription heights shall conform to the following tabulation.

Runway code number	Minimum character height		
	Mandatory instruction sign	Information sign	
		Runway exit and runway vacated signs	Other signs
1 or 2	300 mm	300 mm	200 mm
3 or 4	400 mm	400 mm	300 mm

Note. — Where a taxiway location sign is installed in conjunction with a runway designation sign (see 5.4.3.22), the character size shall be that specified for mandatory instruction signs.

2. Arrow dimensions shall be as follows:

Legend height	**Stroke**
200 mm	32 mm
300 mm	48 mm
400 mm	64 mm

3. Stroke width for single letter shall be as follows:

Legend height	**Stroke**
200 mm	32 mm
300 mm	48 mm
400 mm	64 mm

4. The forms of characters, i.e. letters, numbers, arrows and symbols, shall conform to those shown in Figure A4-2. The width of characters and the space between individual characters shall be determined as indicated in Table A4-1.

5. The face height of signs shall be as follows:

Legend height	**Face height (min)**
200 mm	400 mm
300 mm	600 mm
400 mm	800 mm

6. The face width of signs shall be determined using Figure A4-4 except that, where a mandatory instruction sign is provided on one side of a taxiway only, the face width shall not be less than:

a) 1.94 m where the code number is 3 or 4; and

b) 1.46 m where the code number is 1 or 2.

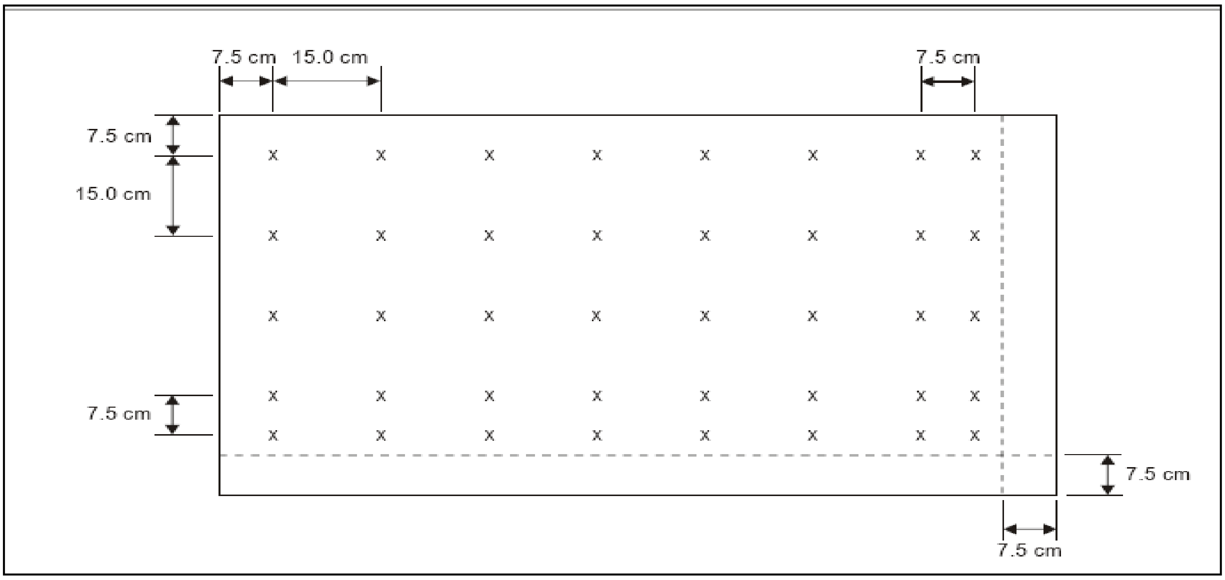
Note— Additional guidance on determining the face width of a sign is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 4.

7. Borders

a) The black vertical delineator between adjacent direction signs should have a width of approximately 0.7 of the stroke width.

b) The yellow border on a stand-alone location sign should be approximately 0.5 stroke width.

8.The colours of signs shall be in accordance with the appropriate specifications in Appendix 1.



Note 1. — The average luminance of a sign is calculated by establishing grid points on a sign face showing typical inscriptions and a background of the appropriate colour (red for mandatory instruction signs and yellow for direction and destination signs) as follows:

a) Starting at the top left corner of the sign face, establish a reference grid point at 7.5 cm from the left edge and the top of the sign face.

b) Create a grid of 15 cm spacing horizontally and vertically from the reference grid point. Grid points within 7.5 cm of the edge of the sign face shall be excluded.

c) Where the last point in a row/column of grid points is located between 22.5 cm and 15 cm from the edge of the sign face (but not inclusive), an additional point shall be added 7.5 cm from this point.

d) Where a grid point falls on the boundary of a character and the background, the grid point shall be slightly shifted to be completely outside the character.

Note 2. — Additional grid points may be required to ensure that each character includes at least five evenly spaced grid points.

Note 3—Where one unit includes two types of signs, a separate grid shall be established for each type.

Figure A3-1. Grid points for calculating average luminance of a sign

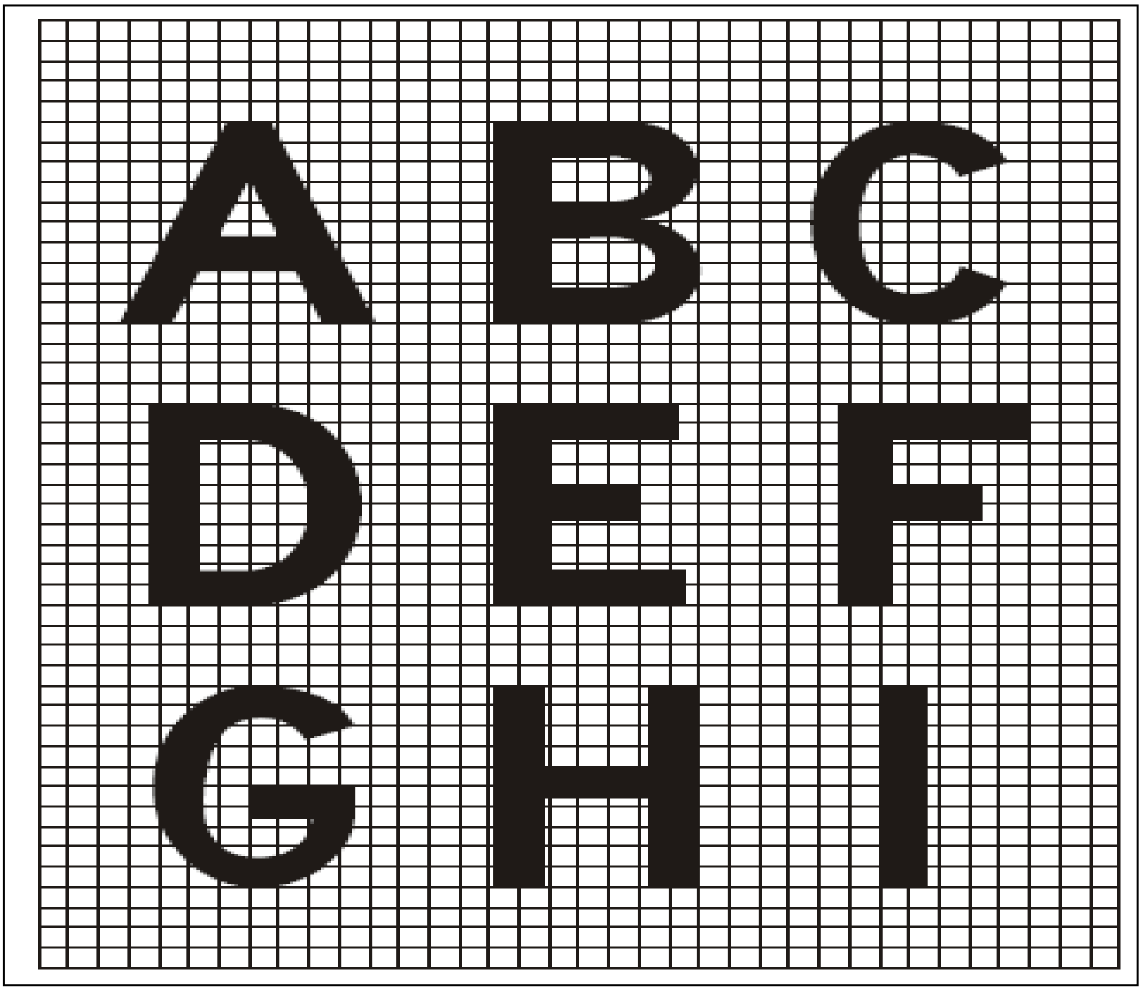


Figure A3-2. Forms of characters

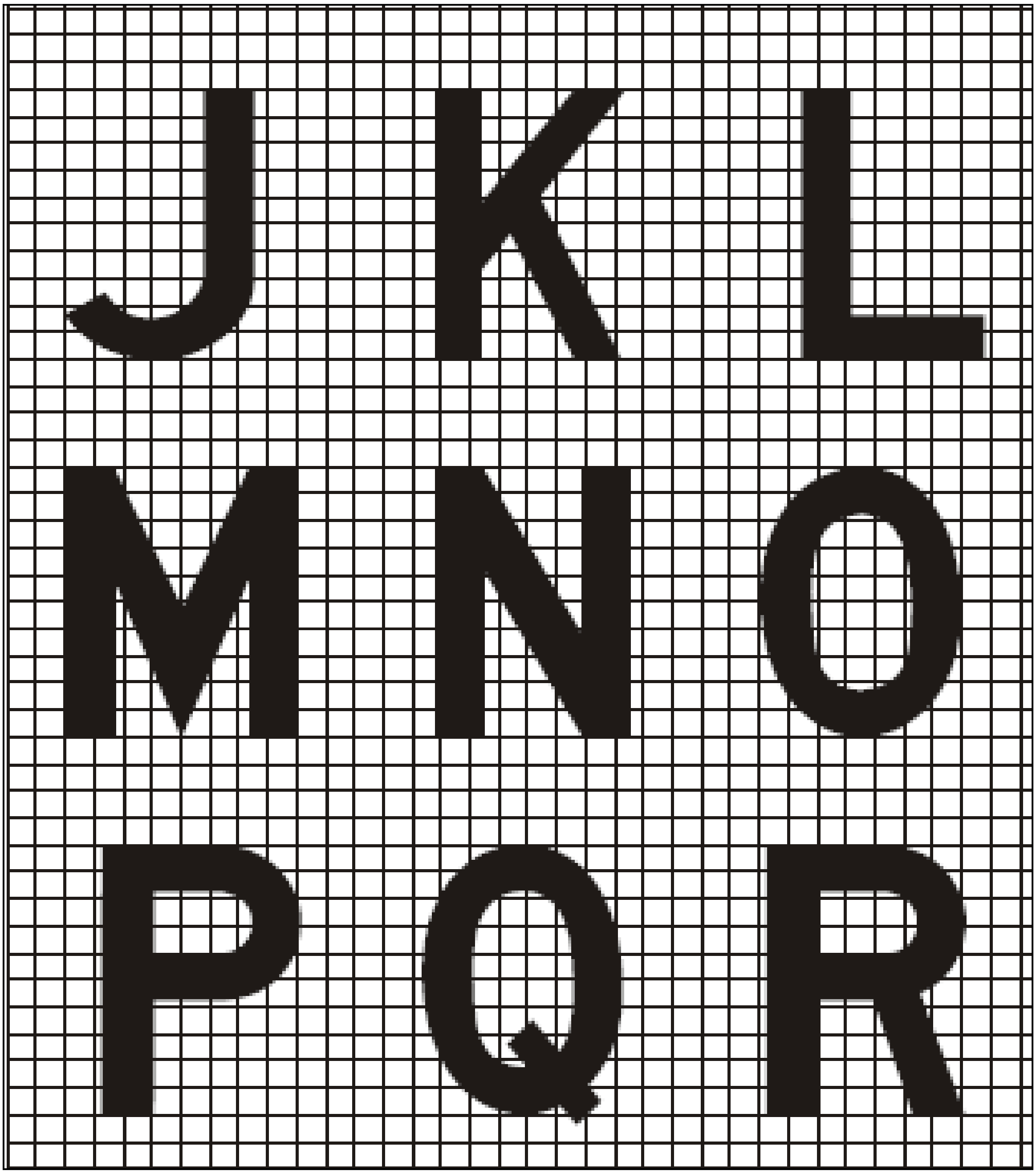
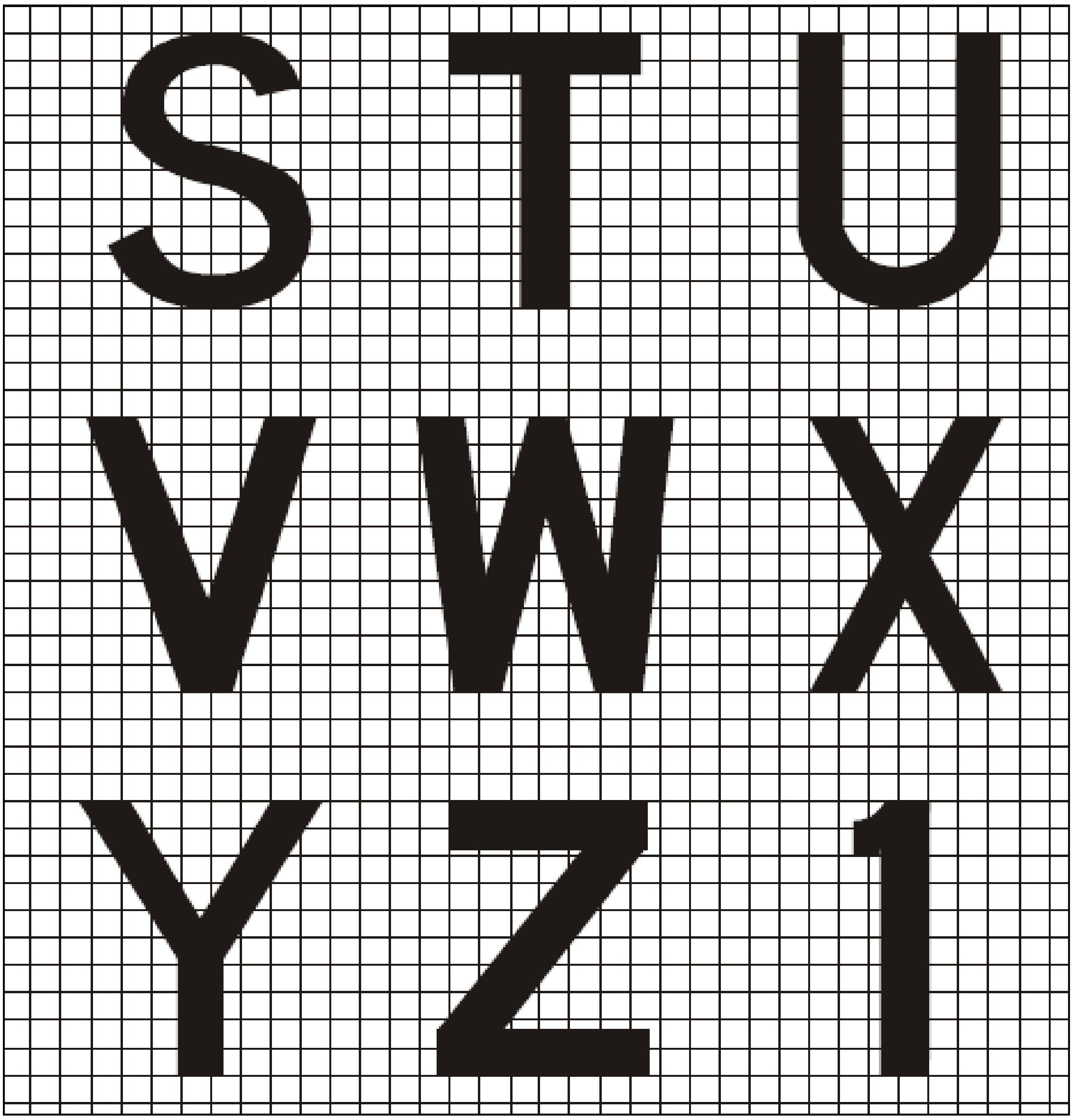


Figure A3-2. (cont.)


S T U
V W X
Y Z 1

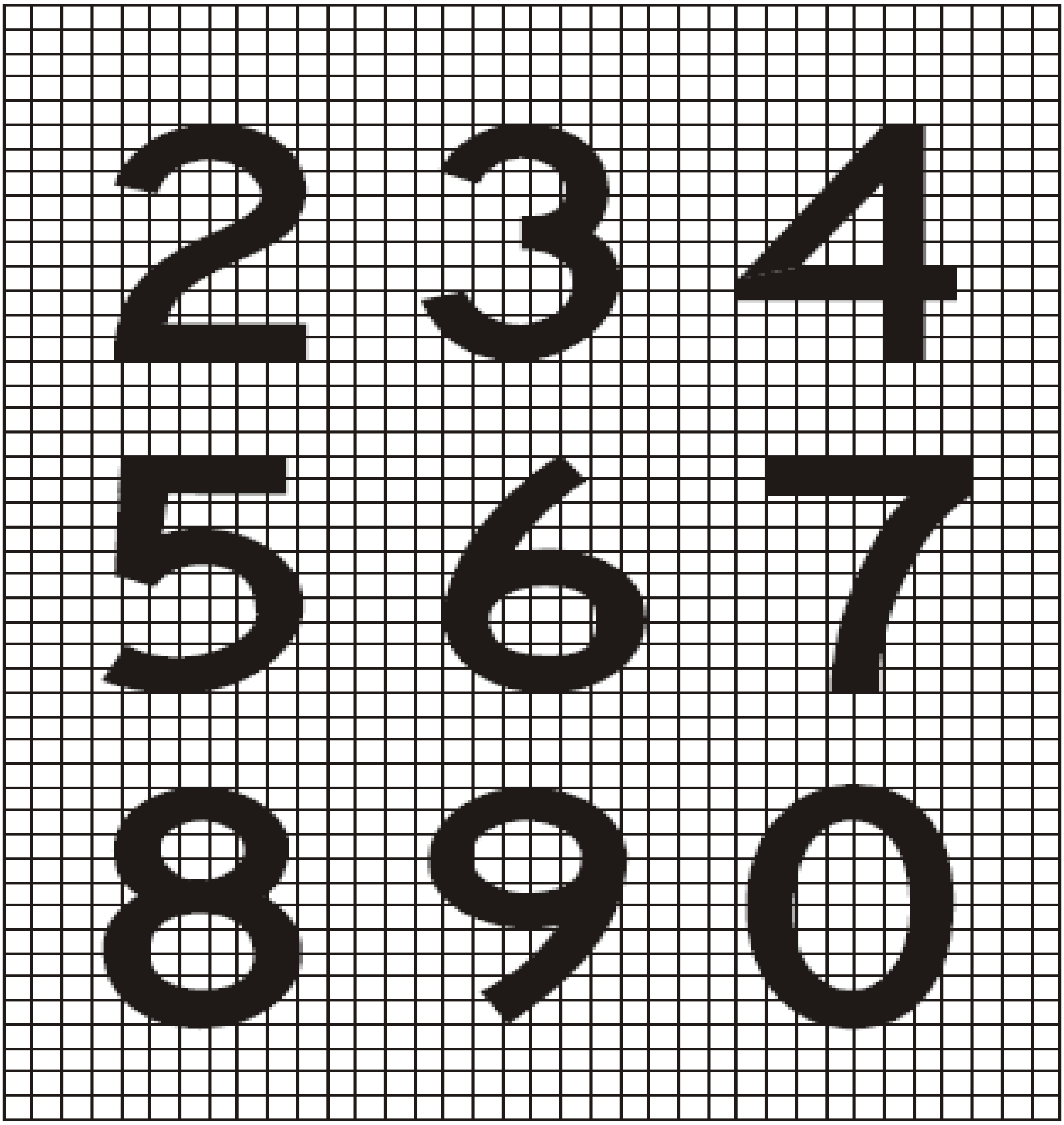


Figure A4-2. (cont.)

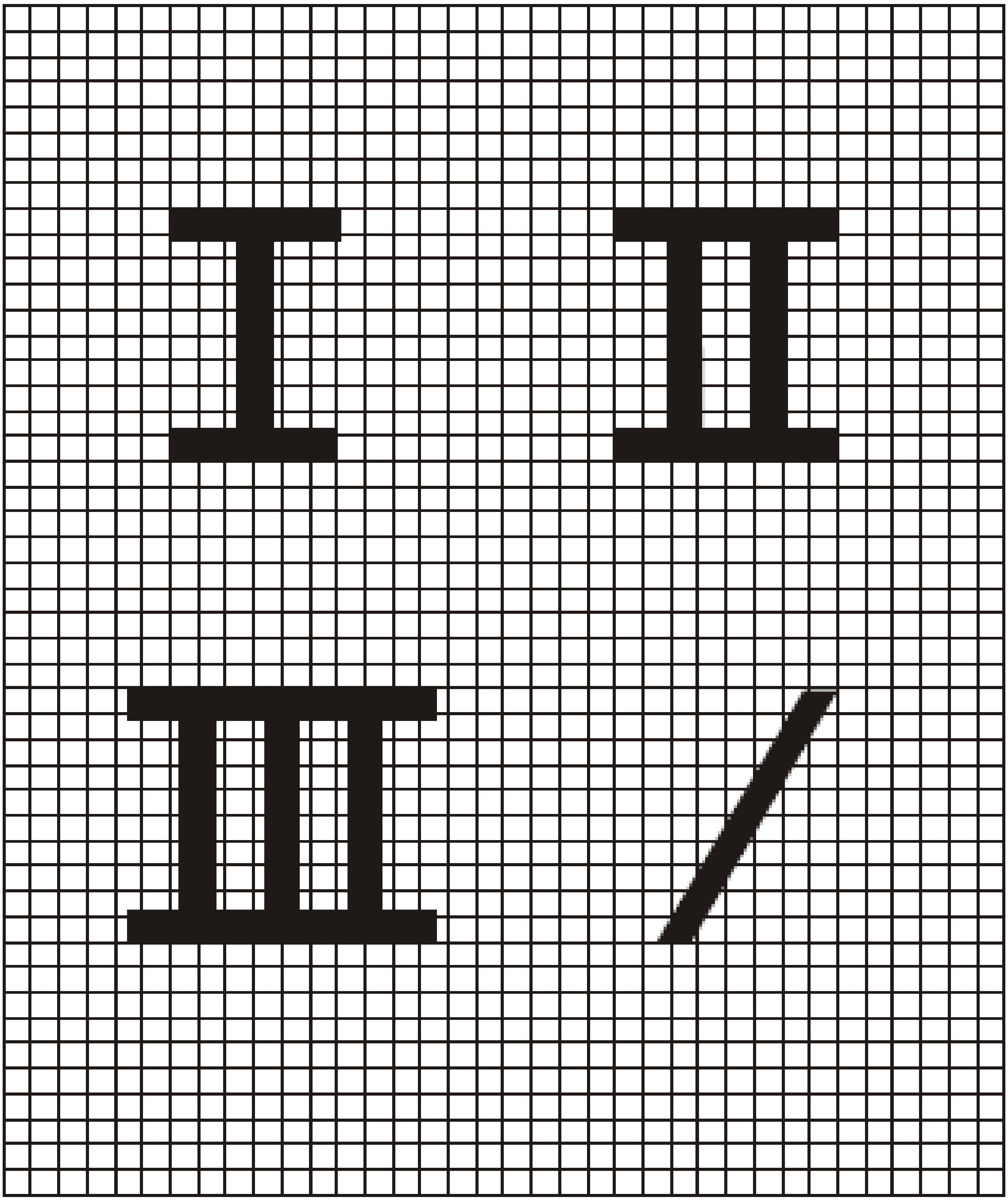
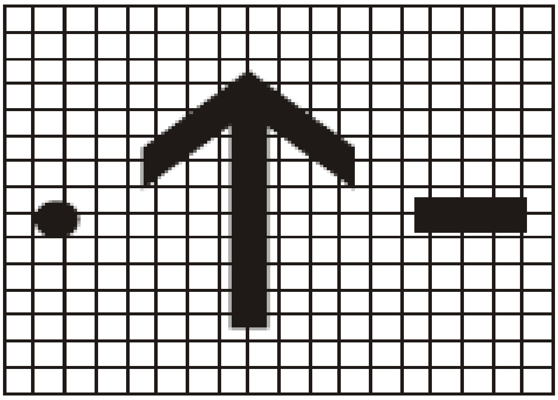


Figure A4-2. (cont.)

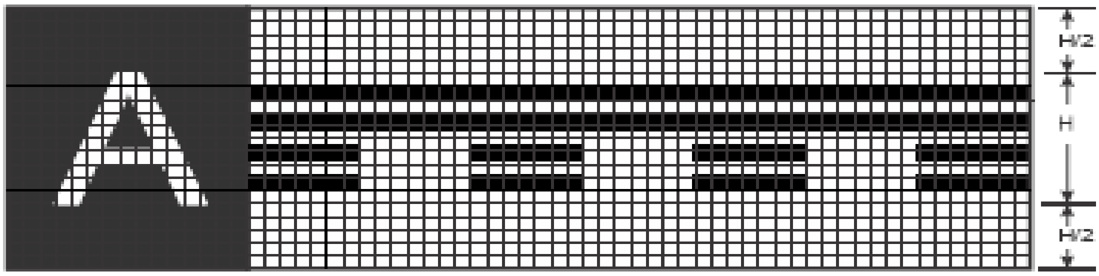


Arrow, dot and dash

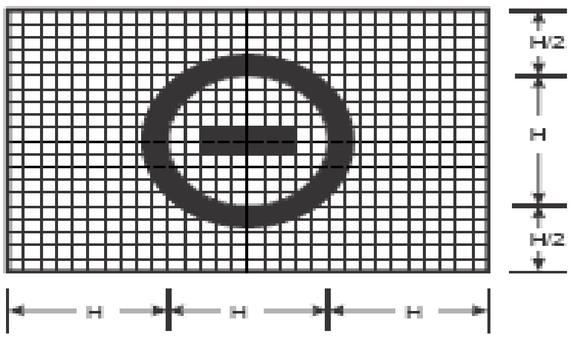
Note 1.—The arrow stroke width, diameter of the dot, and both width and length of the dash shall be proportioned to the character stroke widths.

Note 2.— The dimensions of the arrow shall remain constant for a particular sign size, regardless of orientation.

Figure A4-2.



Runway vacated sign (with typical location sign)



NO ENTRY sign

Figure A4-3. Runway vacated and NO ENTRY signs

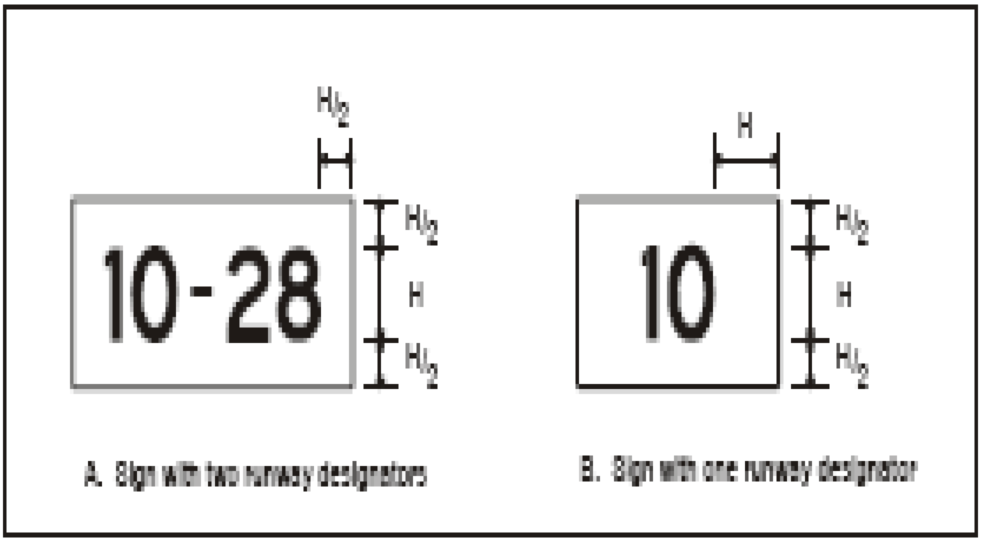


Figure A4-4. Sign dimensions

Table A4-1. Letter and numeral widths and space between letters or numerals

a) Letter to letter code number			
Preceding Letter	Following Letter		
	B, D, E, F, H, I, K, L, M, N, P, R, U	C, G, O, Q, S, X, Z	A, J, T, V, W, Y
	Code number		
A	2	2	4
B	1	2	2
C	2	2	3
D	1	2	2
E	2	2	3
F	2	2	3
G	1	2	2
H	1	1	2
I	1	1	2
J	1	1	2
K	2	2	3
L	2	2	4
M	1	1	2
N	1	1	2
O	1	2	2
P	1	2	2
Q	1	2	2
R	1	2	2
S	1	2	2
T	2	2	4
U	1	1	2
V	2	2	4
W	2	2	4
X	2	2	3
Y	2	2	4
Z	2	2	3

Z 2 2 3

d) Width of letter			
Letter	Letter height (mm)		
	200	300	400
	Width (mm)		
A	170	255	340
B	137	205	274
C	137	205	274
D	137	205	274
E	124	186	248
F	124	186	248
G	137	205	274
H	137	205	274
I	32	48	64
J	127	190	254
K	140	210	280
L	124	186	248
M	157	236	314
N	137	205	274
O	143	214	286
P	137	205	274
Q	143	214	286
R	137	205	274
S	137	205	274
T	124	186	248
U	137	205	274
V	152	229	304
W	178	267	356
X	137	205	274
Y	171	257	342
Z	137	205	274

e) Width of numeral

b) Numeral to numeral code number			
Preceding Numeral	Following number		
	1, 5	2, 3, 6, 8, 9, 0	4, 7
	Code number		
1	1	1	2
2	1	2	2
3	1	2	2
4	2	2	4
5	1	2	2
6	1	2	2
7	2	2	4
8	1	2	2
9	1	2	2
0	1	2	2

c) Space between characters			
Code No.	Letter height (mm)		
	200	300	400
	Space (mm)		
1	48	71	96
2	38	57	76
3	25	38	50
4	13	19	26

e) Width of numeral			
Numeral	Numeral height (mm)		
	200	300	400
	Width (mm)		
1	50	74	98
2	137	205	274
3	137	205	274
4	149	224	298
5	137	205	274
6	137	205	274
7	137	205	274
8	137	205	274
9	137	205	274
0	143	214	286

INSTRUCTIONS

1. To determine the proper SPACE between letters or numerals, obtain the code number from table a) or b) and enter table c) for that code number to the desired letter or numeral height.
2. The space between words or groups of characters forming an abbreviation or symbol should be equal to 0.5 to 0.75 of the height of the characters used except that where an arrow is located with a single character such as 'A →', the space may be reduced to not less than one quarter of the height of the character in order to provide a good visual balance.
3. Where the numeral follows a letter or vice versa use Code 1.
4. Where a hyphen, dot, or diagonal stroke follows a character or vice versa use Code 1.

APPENDIX 4. AERONAUTICAL DATA QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

Table A5-1. Latitude and longitude

Latitude and longitude	Accuracy Data type	Integrity Classification
Aerodrome reference point	30 m surveyed/calculated	routine
Navaids located at the aerodrome	3 m surveyed	essential
Obstacles in Area 3	0.5 m surveyed	essential
Obstacles in Area 2 (the part within the aerodrome boundary)	5 m surveyed	essential
Runway thresholds	1 m surveyed	critical
Runway end (flight path alignment point)	1 m surveyed	critical
Runway centre line points	1 m surveyed	critical
Runway-holding position	0.5 m surveyed	critical
Taxiway centre line/parking guidance line points	0.5 m surveyed	essential
Taxiway intersection marking line	0.5 m surveyed	essential
Exit guidance line	0.5 m surveyed	essential
Apron boundaries (polygon)	1 m surveyed	routine
De-icing/anti-icing facility (polygon)	1 m surveyed	routine
Aircraft stand points/INS checkpoints	0.5 m surveyed	routine

Note 1.— See Annex 15, Appendix 8, for graphical illustrations of obstacle data collection surfaces and criteria used to identify obstacles in the defined areas.

Note 2.— Implementation of Annex 15, provisions 10.1.4 and 10.1.6, concerning the availability, as of 12 November 2015, of obstacle data according to Area 2 and Area 3 specifications would be facilitated by appropriate advance planning for the collection and processing of such data.

Table A5-2. Elevation/altitude/height

Elevation/altitude/height	Accuracy Data type	Integrity Classification
Aerodrome elevation	0.5 m surveyed	essential
WGS-84 geoid undulation at aerodrome elevation position	0.5 m surveyed	essential
Runway threshold, non-precision approaches	0.5 m surveyed	essential
WGS-84 geoid undulation at runway threshold, non-precision approaches	0.5 m surveyed	essential
Runway threshold, precision approaches	0.25 m surveyed	critical
WGS-84 geoid undulation at runway threshold, precision approaches	0.25 m surveyed	critical
Runway centre line points	0.25 m surveyed	critical
Taxiway centre line/parking guidance line points	1 m surveyed	essential
Obstacles in Area 2 (the part within the aerodrome boundary)	3 m surveyed	essential
Obstacles in Area 3	0.5 m surveyed	essential
Distance measuring equipment/precision (DME/P)	3 m surveyed	essential

Note 1.— See Annex 15, Appendix 8, for graphical illustrations of obstacle data collection surfaces and criteria used to identify obstacles in the defined areas.

Note 2.— Implementation of Annex 15, provisions 10.1.4 and 10.1.6, concerning the availability, as of 12 November 2015, of obstacle data according to Area 2 and Area 3 specifications would be facilitated by appropriate advance planning for the collection and processing of such data.

Table A5-3. Declination and magnetic variation

Declination/variation	Accuracy Data type	Integrity Classification
Aerodrome magnetic variation	1 degree surveyed	essential
ILS localizer antenna magnetic variation	1 degree surveyed	essential
MLS azimuth antenna magnetic variation	1 degree surveyed	essential

Table A5-4. Bearing

Bearing	Accuracy Data type	Integrity Classification
ILS localizer alignment	1/100 degree surveyed	essential
MLS zero azimuth alignment	1/100 degree surveyed	essential
Runway bearing (True)	1/100 degree surveyed	routine

Table A4-5. Length/distance/dimension

Length/distance/dimension	Accuracy Data type	Integrity Classification
Runway length	1 m surveyed	critical
Runway width	1 m surveyed	essential
Displaced threshold distance	1 m surveyed	routine
Stopway length and width	1 m surveyed	critical
Clearway length and width	1 m surveyed	essential
Landing distance available	1 m surveyed	critical
Take-off run available	1 m surveyed	critical
Take-off distance available	1 m surveyed	critical
Accelerate-stop distance available	1 m surveyed	critical
Runway shoulder width	1 m surveyed	essential
Taxiway width	1 m surveyed	essential
Taxiway shoulder width	1 m surveyed	essential
ILS localizer antenna-runway end, distance	3 m calculated	routine
ILS glide slope antenna-threshold, distance along centre line	3 m calculated	routine
ILS marker-threshold distance	3 m calculated	essential
ILS DME antenna-threshold, distance along centre line	3 m calculated	essential
MLS azimuth antenna-runway end, distance	3 m calculated	routine
MLS elevation antenna-threshold, distance along centre line	3 m calculated	routine
MLS DME/P antenna-threshold, distance along centre line	3 m calculated	essential

ATTACHMENT A.

GUIDANCE MATERIAL SUPPLEMENTARY TO BHUTAB AERODROME STANDARDS

1. Number, sitting and orientation of runways

Sitting and orientation of runways

1.1. Many factors should be taken into account in the determination of the siting and orientation of runways. Without attempting to provide an exhaustive list of these factors nor an analysis of their effects, it appears useful to indicate those which most frequently require study. These factors may be classified under four headings:

1.1.1 Type of operation. Attention should be paid in particular to whether the aerodrome is to be used in all meteorological conditions or only in visual meteorological conditions, and whether it is intended for use by day and night, or only by day.

1.1.2 Climatological conditions. A study of the wind distribution should be made to determine the usability factor. In this regard, the following comments should be taken into account:

a) Wind statistics used for the calculation of the usability factor are normally available in ranges of speed and direction, and the accuracy of the results obtained depends, to a large extent, on the assumed distribution of observations within these ranges. In the absence of any sure information as to the true distribution, it is usual to assume a uniform distribution since, in relation to the most favorable runway orientations, this generally results in a slightly conservative usability factor.

b) The maximum mean crosswind components given in Chapter 3, 3.1.3, refer to normal circumstances. There are some factors which may require that a reduction of those maximum values be taken into account at a particular aerodrome. These include:

1) the wide variations which may exist, in handling characteristics and maximum permissible crosswind components, among diverse types of aeroplanes (including future types) within each of the three groups given in 3.1.3;

2) prevalence and nature of gusts;

3) prevalence and nature of turbulence;

4) the availability of a secondary runway;

5) the width of runways;

6) the runway surface conditions — water, snow and ice on the runway materially reduce the allowable crosswind component; and

7) the strength of the wind associated with the limiting crosswind component.

A study should also be made of the occurrence of poor visibility and/or low cloud base. Account should be taken of their frequency as well as the accompanying wind direction and speed.

1.1.3 Topography of the aerodrome site, its approaches, and surroundings, particularly:

a) compliance with the obstacle limitation surfaces;
b) current and future land use. The orientation and layout should be selected so as to protect as far as possible the particularly sensitive areas such as residential, school and hospital zones from the discomfort caused by aircraft noise. Detailed information on this topic is provided in the Airport Planning Manual (Doc 9184), Part 2, and in

Guidance on the Balanced Approach to Aircraft Noise Management (Doc 9829);

c) current and future runway lengths to be provided;
d) construction costs; and
e) possibility of installing suitable non-visual and visual aids for approach-to-land.

1.1.4 Air traffic in the vicinity of the aerodrome, particularly:

a) proximity of other aerodromes or ATS routes;
b) traffic density; and
c) air traffic control and missed approach procedures.

Number of runways in each direction

1.2 The number of runways to be provided in each direction depends on the number of aircraft movements to be catered to.

2. Clearways and stopways

2.1 The decision to provide a stopway and/or a clearway as an alternative to an increased length of runway will depend on the physical characteristics of the area beyond the runway end, and on the operating performance requirements of the prospective aeroplanes. The runway, stopway and clearway lengths to be provided are determined by the aeroplane take-off performance, but a check should also be made of the landing distance required by the aeroplanes using the runway to ensure that adequate runway length is provided for landing. The length of a clearway, however, cannot exceed half the length take-off run available.

2.2 The aeroplane performance operating limitations require a length which is enough to ensure that the aeroplane can, after starting a take-off, either be brought safely to a stop or complete the take-off safely. For the purpose of discussion it is supposed that the runway, stopway and clearway lengths provided at the aerodrome are only just adequate for the aeroplane requiring the longest take-off and accelerate-stop distances, taking into account its take-off mass, runway characteristics and ambient atmospheric conditions. Under these circumstances there is, for each take-off, a speed, called the decision speed; below this speed, the take-off must be abandoned if an engine fails, while above it the take-off must be completed. A very long take- off run and take-off distance would be required to complete a take-off when an engine fails before the decision speed is reached, because of the insufficient speed and the reduced power available. There would be no difficulty in stopping in the remaining accelerate-stop distance available provided action is taken immediately. In these circumstances the correct course of action would be to abandon the take-off.

2.3 On the other hand, if an engine fails after the decision speed is reached, the aeroplane will have sufficient speed and power available to complete the take-off safely in the remaining take- off distance available. However, because of the high speed, there would be difficulty in stopping the aeroplane in the remaining accelerate-stop distance available.

2.4 The decision speed is not a fixed speed for any aeroplane, but can be selected by the pilot within limits to suit the accelerate-stop and take-off distance available, aeroplane take-off mass, runway characteristics and ambient atmospheric conditions at the aerodrome. Normally, a higher decision speed is selected as the accelerate-stop distance available increases.

2.5 A variety of combinations of accelerate-stop distances required and take-off distances required can be obtained to accommodate a particular aeroplane, taking into account the aeroplane take-off mass, runway characteristics, and ambient atmospheric conditions. Each combination requires its particular length of take-off run.

2.6 The most familiar case is where the decision speed is such that the take-off distance required is equal to the accelerate-stop distance required; this value is known as the balanced field length. Where stopway and clearway are not provided, these distances are both equal to the runway length. However, if landing distance is for the moment ignored, runway is not essential for the whole of the balanced field length, as the take-off run required is, of course, less than the balanced field length. The balanced field length can, therefore, be provided by a runway supplemented by an equal length of clearway and stop way, instead of wholly as a runway. If the runway is used for take-off in both directions, an equal length of clearway and stop way has to be provided at each runway end. The saving in runway length is, therefore, bought at the cost of a greater overall length.

2.7 In case economic considerations preclude the provision of stopway and, as a result, only runway and clearway are to be provided, the runway length (neglecting landing requirements) should be equal to the accelerate-stop distance required or the take-off run required, whichever is the greater. The take-off distance available will be the length of the runway plus the length of clearway.

2.8 The minimum runway length and the maximum stopway or clearway length to be provided may be determined as follows, from the data in the aeroplane flight manual for the aeroplane considered to be critical from the viewpoint of runway lengthrequirements:

a) if a stopway is economically possible, the lengths to be provided are those for the balanced field length. The runway length is the take-off run required or the landing distance required, whichever is the greater. If the accelerate-stop distance required is greater than the runway length so determined, the excess may be provided as stopway, usually at each end of the runway. In addition, a clearway of the same length as the stopway must also be provided;

b) if a stopway is not to be provided, the runway length is the landing distance required, or if it is greater, the accelerate-stop distance required, which corresponds to the lowest practical value of the decision speed. The excess of the take-off distance required over the runway length may be provided as clearway, usually at each end of the runway.

2.9 In addition to the above consideration, the concept of clearways in certain circumstances can be applied to a situation where the take-off distance required for all engines operating exceeds that required for the engine failure case.

2.10 The economy of a stopway can be entirely lost if, after each usage, it must be regraded and compacted. Therefore, it should be designed to withstand at least a certain number of loadings of the aeroplane which the stopway is intended to serve without inducing structural damage to the aeroplane.

3. Calculation of declared distances

3.1 The declared distances to be calculated for each runway direction comprise: the take-off run available (TORA), take-off distance available (TODA), accelerate-stop distance available (ASDA), and landing distance available (LDA).

3.2 Where a runway is not provided with a stop way or clearway and the threshold is located at the extremity of the runway, the four declared distances should normally be equal to the length of the runway, as shown in Figure A-1 (A).

3.3 Where a runway is provided with a clearway (CWY), then the TODA will include the length of clearway, as shown in Figure A-1 (B).

3.4 Where a runway is provided with a stop way (SWY), then the ASDA will include the length of stop way, as shown in Figure A-1 (C).

3.5 Where a runway has a displaced threshold, then the LDA will be reduced by the distance the threshold is displaced, as shown in Figure A-1 (D). A displaced threshold affects only the LDA for approaches made to that threshold; all declared distances for operations in the reciprocal direction are unaffected.

Figures A-1 (B) through A-1 (D) illustrate a runway provided with a clearway or a stopway or having a displaced threshold. Where more than one of these features exist, then more than one of the declared distances will be modified — but the modification will follow the same principle illustrated. An example showing a situation where all these features exist is shown in Figure A- 1 (E).

3.6 A suggested format for providing information on declared distances is given in Figure A-1 (F). If a runway direction cannot be used for take-off or landing, or both, because it is operationally forbidden, then this should be declared and the words "not usable" or the abbreviation "NU" entered.

4. Slopes on a runway

4.1 Distance between slope changes

The following example illustrates how the distance between slope changes is to be determined (see Figure A-2):

D for a runway where the code number is 3 should be at least:

15 000 (|x - y| + |y - z|) m

|x - y| being the absolute numerical value of x - y

|y - z| being the absolute numerical value of y - z

Assuming x = +0.01

Assuming y = -0.005

Assuming z = +0.005

then |x - y| = 0.015

then |y - z| = 0.01

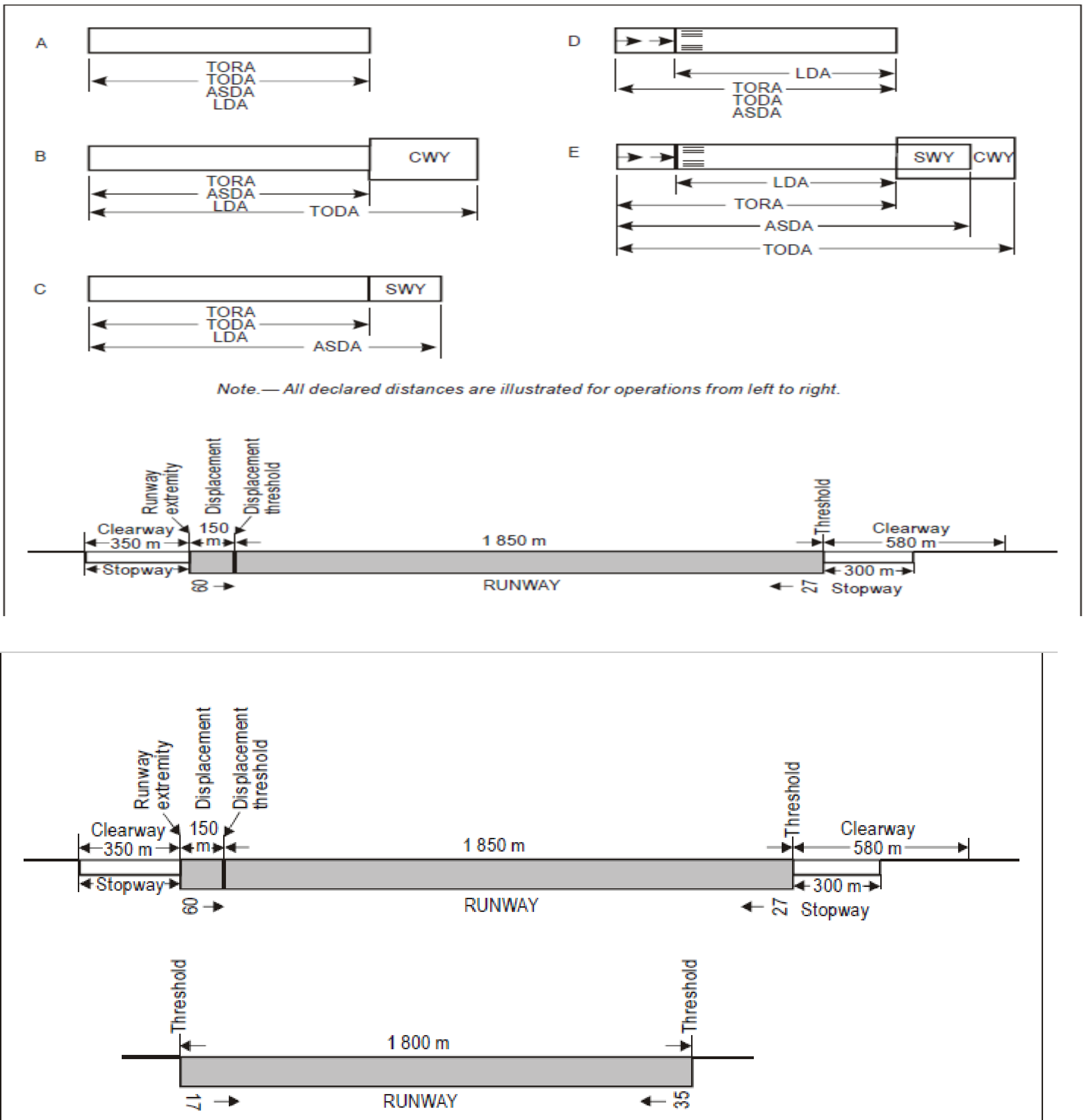
To comply with the specifications, D should be not less than:

that is, 15 000 (0.015 + 0.01) m,

that is, 15 000 × 0.025 = 375 m

4.2 Consideration of longitudinal and transverse slopes

When a runway is planned that will combine the extreme values for the slopes and changes in slope permitted under Chapter 3, 3.1.13 to 3.1.19, a study should be made to ensure that the resulting surface profile will not hamper the operation of aeroplanes.



F

RUNWAY	TORA	ASDA	TODA	LDA
	m	m	m	m
09	2 000	2 300	2 580	1 850
27	2 000	2 350	2 350	2 000
17	NU	NU	NU	1 800
35	1 800	1 800	1 800	NU

Figure A-1. Illustration of declared distances

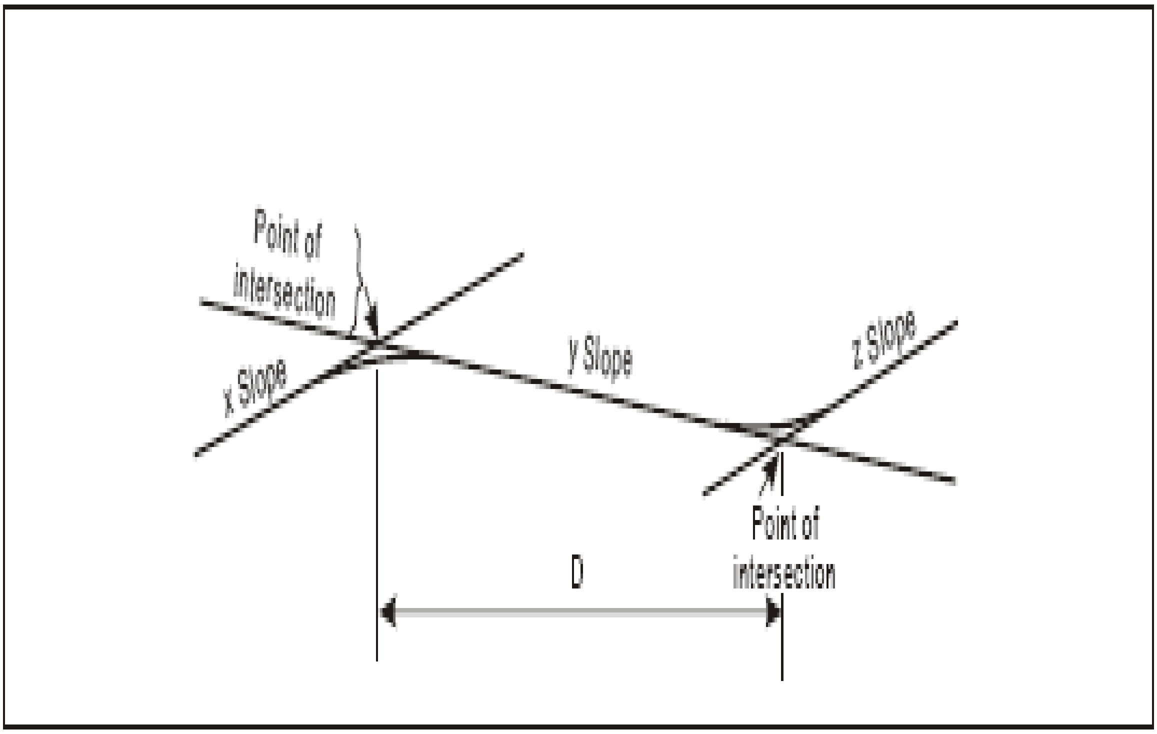


Figure A-2. Profile on centre line of runway

4.3 Radio altimeter operating area

In order to accommodate aeroplanes making auto-coupled approaches and automatic landings (irrespective of weather conditions) it is desirable that slope changes be avoided or kept to a minimum, on a rectangular area at least 300 m long before the threshold of a precision approach runway. The area should be symmetrical about the extended centre line, 120 m wide. When special circumstances so warrant, the width may be reduced to no less than 60 m if an aeronautical study indicates that such reduction would not affect the safety of operations of aircraft. This is desirable because these aeroplanes are equipped with a radio altimeter for final height and flare guidance, and when the aeroplane is above the terrain immediately prior to the threshold, the radio altimeter will begin to provide information to the automatic pilot for auto-flare. Where slope changes cannot be avoided, the rate of change between two consecutive slopes should not exceed 2 per cent per 30 m.

5. Runway surface evenness

5.1 In adopting tolerances for runway surface irregularities, the following standard of construction is achievable for short distances of 3 m and conforms to good engineering practice:

Except across the crown of a camber or across drainage channels, the finished surface of the wearing course is to be of such regularity that, when tested with a 3 m straight-edge placed anywhere in any direction on the surface, there is no deviation greater than 3 mm between the bottom of the straight-edge and the surface of the pavement anywhere along the straight-edge.

5.2 Caution should also be exercised when inserting runway lights or drainage grilles in runway surfaces to ensure that adequate smoothness of the surface is maintained.

5.3 The operation of aircraft and differential settlement of surface foundations will eventually lead to increases in surface irregularities. Small deviations in the above tolerances will not seriously hamper aircraft operations. In general, isolated irregularities of the order of 2.5 cm to 3 cm over a 45 m distance are acceptable, as shown in Figure A-3. Although maximum acceptable deviations vary with the type and speed of an aircraft, the limits of acceptable surface irregularities can be estimated to a reasonable extent. The following table describes acceptable, tolerable and excessive limits:

a) if the surface irregularities exceed the heights defined by the acceptable limit curve but are less than the heights defined by the tolerable limit curve, at the specified minimum acceptable length,herein noted by the tolerable region, then maintenance action should be planned. The runway may remain in service. This region is the start of possible passenger and pilot discomfort;

b) if the surface irregularities exceed the heights defined by the tolerable limit curve, but are less than the heights defined by the excessive limit curve, at the specified minimum acceptable length, herein noted by the excessive region, then maintenance corrective action is mandatory to restore the condition to the acceptable region. The runway may remain in service but be repaired within a reasonable period. This region could lead to the risk of possible aircraft structural damage due to a single event or fatigue failure over time; and

c) if the surface irregularities exceed the heights defined by the excessive limit curve, at the specified minimum acceptable length, herein noted by the unacceptable region, then the area of the runway where the roughness has been identified warrants closure. Repairs must be made to restore the condition to within the acceptable limit region and the aircraft operators may be advised accordingly. This region runs the extreme risk of a structural failure and must be addressed immediately.

Surface irregularity	Length of irregularity (m)								
	3	6	9	12	15	20	30	45	60
Acceptable surface irregularity height (cm)	2.9	3.8	4.5	5	5.4	5.9	6.5	8.5	10
Tolerable surface irregularity height (cm)	3.9	5.5	6.8	7.8	8.6	9.6	11	13.6	16
Excessive surface irregularity height (cm)	5.8	7.6	9.1	10	10.8	11.9	13.9	17	20

Note that "surface irregularity" is defined herein to mean isolated surface elevation deviations that do not lie along a uniform slope through any given section of a runway. For the purposes of this concern, a "section of a runway" is defined herein to mean a segment of a runway throughout which a continuing general uphill, downhill or flat slope is prevalent. The length of this section is generally between 30 and 60 metres, and can be greater, depending on the longitudinal profile and the condition of the pavement.

The maximum tolerable step type bump, such as that which could exist between adjacent slabs, is simply the bump height corresponding to zero bump length at the upper end of the tolerable region of the roughness criteria of Figure A-3. The bump height at this location is 1.75 cm.

5.4 Figure A-3 illustrates a comparison of the surface roughness criteria with those developed by the United States Federal Aviation Administration. Further guidance regarding temporary slopes for overlay works on operational runways can be found in the Aerodrome Design Manual, Part 3 — Pavements (Doc 9157).

5.5 Deformation of the runway with time may also increase the possibility of the formation of water pools. Pools as shallow as approximately 3 mm in depth, particularly if they are located where they are likely to be encountered at high speed by landing aeroplanes, can induce aquaplaning, which can then be sustained on a wet runway by a much shallower depth of water. Improved guidance regarding the significant length and depth of pools relative to aquaplaning is the subject of further research. It is, of course, especially necessary to prevent pools from forming whenever there is a possibility that they might become frozen.

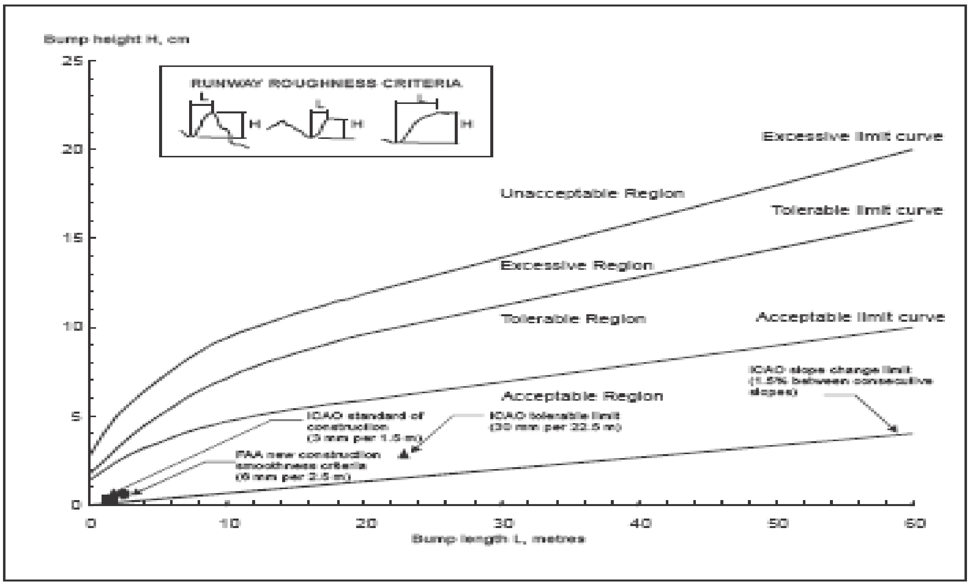


Figure A-3. Comparison of roughness criteria

Note.— These criteria address single event roughness, not long wavelength harmonic effects nor the effect of repetitive surface undulations.

Figure A-3. Comparison of roughness criteria

Note.— These criteria address single event roughness, not long wavelength harmonic effects nor the effect t of repetitive surface undulations.

6. Assessing the surface friction characteristics of snow-, slush-, ice- and frost covered paved surfaces.

6.1 There is an operational need for reliable and uniform information concerning the surface condition of contaminated runways. Contaminant type, distribution and for loose contaminants, depth are assessed for each third of the runway. An indication of surface friction characteristics is helpful in conducting runway condition assessment. It can be obtained by friction measuring devices; however, there is no international consensus on the ability to correlate the results obtained by such equipment directly with aircraft performance. However, for contaminants such as slush, wet snow and wet ice, contaminant drag on the equipment's measuring wheel, amongst other factors, may cause readings obtained in these conditions to be unreliable.

6.2 Any friction measuring device intended predict aircraft braking performance according to an agreed local or national procedure should be shown to correlate such performance in a manner acceptable to the State. Information on the practice of one State providing correlation directly with aircraft braking performance can be found in Appendix A of Assessment, Measurement and Reporting of Runway Surface Conditions (ICAO Cir 329).

6.3 The friction conditions of a runway can be assessed in descriptive terms of ―estimated surface friction‖. The estimated surface friction is categorized as good, medium to good, medium, medium to poor, and poor, and promulgated in Annex 15, Appendix 2, ―SNOWTAM format‖ as well as in PANS-ATM, Chapter 12, 12.3, ―ATC phraseologies‖.

6.4 The table below with associated descriptive terms was developed from friction data collected only in compacted snow and ice and should not therefore be taken to be absolute values applicable in all conditions. If the surface is affected by snow or ice and the estimated surface friction is reported as ―good‖, pilots should not expect to find conditions as good as on a clean dry runway (where the available friction may well be greater than that needed in any case). The value ―good‖ is a comparative value and is intended to mean that aeroplanes should not experience directional control or braking difficulties, especially when landing. The figures in the ―Measured Coefficient μ‖ column are given as an indication. At each aerodrome a specific table can be developed according to the measuring device used on the aerodrome and according to the standard and correlation criteria set or agreed by the State. The μ values given will be specific to each friction measuring device as well as to the surface being measured and the speed employed.

Measured coefficient μ	Estimated surface friction	Code
0.40 and above	Good	5
0.39 to 0.36	Medium to good	4
0.35 to 0.30	Medium	3
0.29 to 0.26	Medium to poor	2
0.25 and below	Poor	1

6.5 Relating braking action to friction measurements has been elusive over the years. The main reason is that the industry to date has not achieved the ability to control the total uncertainty associated with the readings from these devices. Consequently, readings from a friction measuring device should be used only as part of an overall runway condition assessment. A major difference between the decelerometer type of devices and the other types is that when using the decelerometer type the operator is an integrated part of the measuring process. In addition to carrying out the measurement, the operator can feel the behaviour of the vehicle where the decelerometer is installed and by that feel the deceleration process. This gives additional information in the total assessment process.

6.6 It has been found necessary to provide assessed surface condition information, including estimated surface friction, for each third of a runway. The thirds are called A, B and C. For the purpose of reporting information to aeronautical service units, section A is always the section associated with the lower runway designation number. When giving landing information to a pilot before landing, the sections are however referred to as first, second or third part of the runway. The first part always means the first third of the runway as seen in the direction of landing. Assessments are made along two lines parallel to the runway, i.e. along a line on each side of the centre line approximately 3 m, or that distance from the centre line at which most operations take place. The objective of the assessment is to determine the type, depth and coverage of the contaminants and their effect on estimated surface friction, given the prevailing weather conditions for sections A, B and C. In cases where a continuous friction measuring device is used, the mean values are obtained from the friction values recorded for each section. In cases where a spot measuring friction measuring device is used as part of the total assessment of estimated surface friction, each third of the runway should have a minimum of three tests carried out on it where achievable. Information collected and assessed on the state of pavement surface is disseminated using forms prepared by the State for SNOWTAM and NOTAM (see the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137) Part 2).

6.7 The Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2 provides guidance on the uniform use of test equipment and other information on removal of surface contamination and improvement of friction conditions.

7. **Determination of surface friction characteristics for construction and maintenance purposes**

Note.: The guidance in this section involves the functional measurement of friction-related aspects related to runway construction and maintenance. Excluded from this section is the operational, as opposed to functional, measurement of friction for contaminated runways. However, the devices used for functional measurement could also be used for operational measurement, but in the latter case, the figures given in Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2, Table 3-1 are not relevant.

7.1 The surface friction characteristics of a paved runwayshould be:

a) assessed to verify the surface friction characteristics of new or resurfaced paved runways (Chapter 3, 3.1.25); and

b) assessed periodically in order to determine the slipperiness of paved runways (Chapter 10, 10.2.4).

7.2 The condition of a runway pavement is generally assessed under dry conditions using a self-wetting continuous friction measuring device. Evaluation tests of runway surface friction characteristics are made on clean surfaces of the runway when first constructed or after resurfacing.

7.3 Friction tests of existing surface conditions are taken periodically in order to avoid falling below the minimum friction level specified by the State. When the friction of any portion of a runway is found to be below this value, then such information is promulgated in a NOTAM specifying which portion of the runway is below the minimum friction level and its location on the runway. A corrective maintenance action must be initiated without delay. Friction measurements are taken at time intervals that will ensure the identification of runways in need of maintenance or of special surface treatment before their condition becomes serious. The time intervals and mean frequency of measurements depend on factors such as: aircraft type and frequency of usage, climatic conditions, pavement type, and pavement service and maintenance requirements.

7.4 Friction measurements of existing, new or resurfaced runways are made with a continuous friction measuring device provided with a smooth tread tire. The device should use self-wetting features to allow measurements of the surface friction characteristics to be made at a water depth of 1 mm.

7.5 When it is suspected that the surface friction characteristics of a runway may be reduced because of poor drainage, owing to inadequate slopes or depressions, then an additional measurement is made, but this time under natural conditions representative of a local rain. This measurement differs from the previous one in that water depths in the poorly cleared areas are normally greater in a local rain condition. The measurement results are thus more apt to identify problem areas having low friction values that could induce aquaplaning than the previous test. If circumstances do not permit measurements to be conducted during natural conditions representative of a rain, then this condition may be simulated. (See section 8.)

7.6 When conducting friction tests using a self-wetting continuous friction measuring device, it is important to note that, unlike compacted snow and ice conditions, in which there is very limited variation of the friction coefficient with speed, a wet runway produces a drop in friction with an increase in speed. However, as the speed increases, the rate at which the friction is reduced becomes less. Among the factors affecting the friction coefficient between the tire and the runway surface, texture is particularly important. If the runway has a good macro-texture allowing the water to escape beneath the tire, then the friction value will be less affected by speed. Conversely, a low macro-texture surface will produce a larger drop in friction with increase in speed.

7.7 Bhutan Aerodrome Standards requires aerodrome operator to specify a minimum friction level below which corrective maintenance action should be taken. As criteria for surface friction characteristics of new or resurfaced runway surfaces and its maintenance planning, the State can establish a maintenance planning level below which appropriate corrective maintenance action should be initiated to improve the friction. The Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2, provides guidance on establishing maintenance planning and minimum friction levels for runway surfaces in use.

6. Drainage characteristics of the movement area and adjacent areas

8.1 General

Rapid drainage of surface water is a primary safety consideration in the design, construction and maintenance of the movement area and adjacent areas. The objective is to minimize water depth on the surface by draining water off the runway in the shortest path possible and particularly out of the area of the wheel path. There are two distinct drainage processes taking place:

a) natural drainage of the surface water from the top of the pavement surface until it reaches the final recipient such as rivers or other water bodies; and

b) dynamic drainage of the surface water trapped under a moving tire until it reaches outside the tire-to-ground contact area.

8.1.1 Both processes can be controlled through:

a) design;
b) construction; and
c) maintenance of the pavements in order to prevent accumulation of water on the pavement surface.

8.2 Design of pavement

8.2.1 Surface drainage is a basic requirement and serves to minimize water depth on the surface. The objective is to drain water off the runway in the shortest path. Adequate surface drainage is provided primarily by an appropriately sloped surface (in both the longitudinal and transverse directions). The resulting combined longitudinal and transverse slope is the path for the drainage run-off. This path can be shortened by adding transverse grooves.

8.2.2 Dynamic drainage is achieved through built-in texture in the pavement surface. The rolling tire builds up water pressure and squeezes the water out the escape channels provided by the texture. The dynamic drainage of the tire-to-ground contact area may be improved by adding transverse grooves provided that they are subject to rigorous maintenance.

8.3 Construction of pavement

8.3.1 Through construction, the drainage characteristics of the surface are built into the pavement. These surface characteristics are:

a) slopes;

b) texture:

1) micro texture;

2) macro texture;

8.3.2 Slopes for the various parts of the movement area and adjacent parts are described in Chapter 3 and figures are given as per cent. Further guidance is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1, Chapter 5.

8.3.3 Texture in the literature is described as micro texture or macro texture. These terms are understood differently in various parts of the aviation industry.

8.3.4 Micro texture is the texture of the individual stones and is hardly detectable by the eye. Micro texture is considered a primary component in skid resistance at slow speeds. On a wet surface at higher speeds a water film may prevent direct contact between the surface asperities and the tire due to insufficient drainage from the tire-to-ground contact area.

8.3.5 Micro texture is a built-in quality of the pavement surface. By specifying crushed material that will withstand polishing micro texture, drainage of thin water films are ensured for a longer period of time. Resistance against polishing is expressed in terms of the Polished Stone Values (PSV) which is in principle a value obtained from a friction measurement in accordance with international standards. These standards define the PSV minima that will enable a material with a good micro texture to be selected.

8.3.6 A major problem with micro texture is that it can change within short time periods without being easily detected. A typical example of this is the accumulation of rubber deposits in the touchdown area which will largely mask micro texture without necessarily reducing macro texture.

8.3.7 Macro texture is the texture among the individual stones. This scale of texture may be judged approximately by the eye. Macro texture is primarily created by the size of aggregate used or by surface treatment of the pavement and is the major factor influencing drainage capacity at high speeds. Materials shall be selected so as to achieve good macro texture.

8.3.8 The primary purpose of grooving a runway surface is to enhance surface drainage. Natural drainage can be slowed down by surface texture, but grooving can speed up the drainage by providing a shorter drainage path and increasing the drainage rate.

8.3.9 For measurement of macro texture, simple methods such as the ―sand and grease patch‖ methods described in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2 were developed. These methods were used for the early research on which current airworthiness requirements are based, which refer to a classification categorizing macro texture from A to E. This classification was developed, using sand or grease patch measuring techniques, and issued in 1971 by the Engineering Sciences Data Unit (ESDU).

Runway classification based on texture information from ESDU 71026:

Classification		Texture depths (mm)
A	0.10	- 0.14
B	0.15	- 0.24
C	0.25	- 0.50
D	0.51	- 1.00
E	1.01	- 2.54

8.3.10 Using this classification, the threshold value between micro texture and macro texture is 0.1 mm mean texture depth (MTD). Related to this scale, the normal wet runway aircraft performance is based upon texture giving drainage and friction qualities midway between classification B and C (0.25 mm). Improved drainage through better texture might qualify for a better aircraft performance class. However such credit must be in accordance with aeroplane manufacturers' documentation and agreed by the State. Presently credit is given to grooved or porous friction course runways following design, construction and maintenance criteria acceptable to the State. The harmonized certification standards of some States refer to texture giving drainage and friction qualities midwaybetween classification D and E (1.0 mm).

8.3.11 For construction, design and maintenance, States use various international standards. Currently ISO 13473-1: Characterization of pavement texture by use of surface profiles — Part 1: Determination of Mean Profile Depth links the volumetric measuring technique with non-contact profile measuring techniques giving comparable texture values. These standards describe the threshold value between micro texture and macro texture as 0.5 mm. The volumetric method has a validity range from 0.25 to 5 mm MTD. The profilometry method has a validity range from 0 to 5 mm mean profile depth (MPD).
The values of MPD and MTD differ due to the finite size of the glass spheres used in the volumetric technique and because the MPD is derived from a two-dimensional profile rather than a three-dimensional surface. Therefore a transformation equation must be established for the measuring equipment used to relate MPD to MTD.

8.3.12 The ESDU scale groups runway surfaces based on macro texture from A through E, where E represents the surface with best dynamic drainage capacity. The ESDU scale thus reflects the dynamic drainage characteristics of the pavement. Grooving any of these surfaces enhances the dynamic drainage capacity. The resulting drainage capacity of the surface is thus a function of the texture (A through E) and grooving. The contribution from grooving is a function of the size of the grooves and the spacing between the grooves. Aerodromes exposed to heavy or torrential rainfall must ensure that the pavement and adjacent areas have drainage capability to withstand these rainfalls or put limitations on the use of the pavements under such extreme situations. These airports should seek to have the maximum allowable slopes and the use of aggregates providing good drainage characteristics. They should also consider grooved pavements in the E classification to ensure that safety is not impaired.

8.4 Maintenance of drainage characteristics of pavement

8.4.1 Macro texture does not change within a short time span but accumulation of rubber can fill up the texture and as such reduce the drainage capacity, which can result in impaired safety. Furthermore the runway structure may change over time and give unevenness which results in ponding after rainfall. Guidance on rubber removal and unevenness can be found in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2. Guidance on methods for improving surface texture can be found in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3.

8.4.2 When groovings are used, the condition of the grooves should be regularly inspected to ensure that no deterioration has occurred and that the grooves are in good condition. Guidance on maintenance of pavements is available in the Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137), Part 2 — Pavement Surface Conditions and Part 9 — Airport Maintenance Practices and the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2.

8.4.3 The pavement may be shot blasted in order to enhance the pavement macro texture.

7. Strips

9.1 Shoulders

9.1.1 The shoulder of a runway or stopway should be prepared or constructed so as to minimize any hazard to an aeroplane running off the runway or stopway. Some guidance is given in the following paragraphs on certain special problems which may arise, and on the further question of measures to avoid the ingestion of loose stones or other objects by turbine engines.

9.1.2 In some cases, the bearing strength of the natural ground in the strip may be sufficient, without special preparation, to meet the requirements for shoulders. Where special preparation is necessary, the method used will depend on local soil conditions and the mass of the aeroplanes the runway is intended to serve. Soil tests will help in determining the best method of improvement (e.g. drainage, stabilization, surfacing, light paving).

9.1.3 Attention should also be paid when designing shoulders to prevent the ingestion of stones or other objects by turbine engines. Similar considerations apply here to those which are discussed for the margins of taxiways in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 2, both as to the special measures which may be necessary and as to the distance over which such special measures, if required, should be taken.

9.1.4 Where shoulders have been treated specially, either to provide the required bearing strength or to prevent the presence of stones or debris, difficulties may arise because of a lack of visual contrast between the runway surface and that of the adjacent strip. This difficulty can be overcome either by providing a good visual contrast in the surfacing of the runway or strip, or by providing a runway side stripe marking.

9.2 Objects on strips

Within the general area of the strip adjacent to the runway, measures should be taken to prevent an aeroplane's wheel, when sinking into the ground, from striking a hard vertical face. Special problems may arise for runway light fittings or other objects mounted in the strip or at the intersection with a taxiway or another runway. In the case of construction, such as runways or taxiways, where the surface must also be flush with the strip surface, a vertical face can be eliminated by chamfering from the top of the construction to not less than 30 cm below the strip surface level. Other objects, the functions of which do not require them to be at surface level, should be buried to a depth of not less than 30 cm.

9.3 Grading of a strip for precision approach runways

Chapter 3, 3.4.8, recommends that the portion of a strip of an instrument runway within at least 75 m from the centre line should be graded where the code number is 3 or 4. For a precision approach runway, it may be desirable to adopt a greater width where the code number is 3 or 4. Figure A-4 shows the shape and dimensions of a wider strip that may be considered for such a runway. This strip has been designed using information on aircraft running off runways. The portion to be graded extends to a distance of 105 m from the centre line, except that the distance is gradually reduced to 75 m from the centre line at both ends of the strip, for a length of 150 m from the runway end.

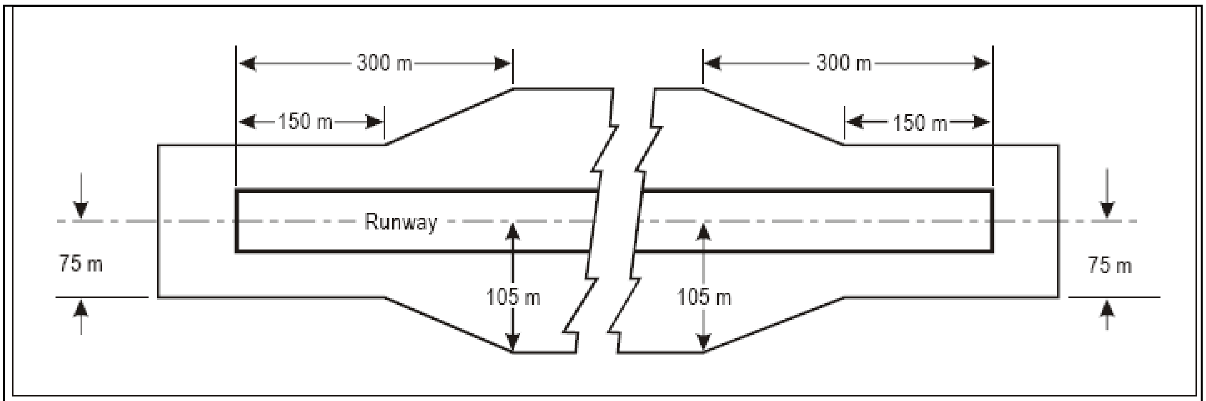


Figure A-4. Graded portion of a strip including a precision approach runway where the code number is 3 or 4

10. Runway end safety areas

10.1 Where a runway end safety area is provided in accordance with Chapter 3, consideration should be given to providing an area long enough to contain overruns and undershoots resulting from a reasonably probable combination of adverse operational factors. On a precision approach runway, the ILS localizer is normally the first upstanding obstacle, and the runway end safety area should extend up to this facility. In other circumstances, the first upstanding obstacle may be a road, a railroad or other constructed or natural feature. The provision of a runway end safety area should take such obstacles into consideration.

10.2 Where provision of a runway end safety area would be particularly prohibitive to implement, consideration would have to be given to reducing some of the declared distances of the runway for the provision of a runway end safety area and installation of an arresting system.

10.3 Research programmes, as well as evaluation of actual aircraft overruns into arresting systems, have demonstrated that the performance of some arresting systems can be predictable and effective in arresting aircraft overruns.

10.4 Demonstrated performance of an arresting system can be achieved by a validated design method, which can predict the performance of the system. The design and performance should be based on the type of aircraft anticipated to use the associated runway that imposes the greatest demand upon the arresting system.

10.5 The design of an arresting system must consider multiple aircraft parameters, including but not limited to, allowable aircraft gear loads, gear configuration, tire contact pressure, aircraft centre of gravity and aircraft speed. Accommodating undershoots must also be addressed. Additionally, the design must allow the safe operation of fully loaded rescue and firefighting vehicles, including their ingress and egress.

10.6 The information relating to the provision of a runway end safety area and the presence of an arresting system should be published in the AIP.

10.7 Additional information is contained in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 1.

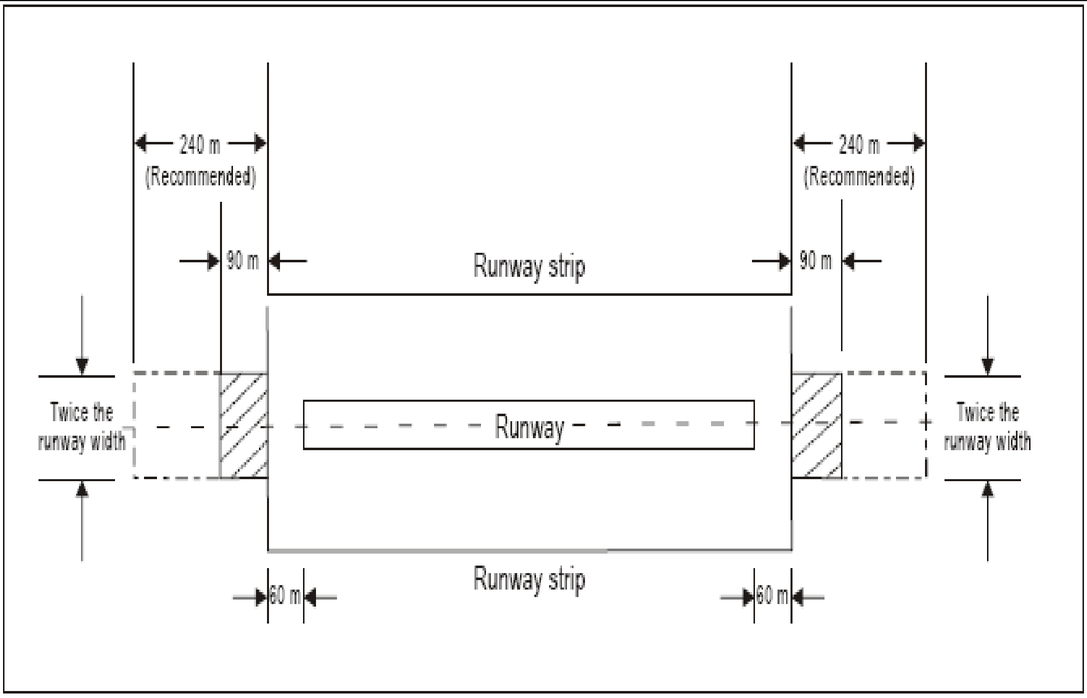


Figure A-5. Runway end safety area for a runway where the code number is 3 or 4

11. Location of threshold

11.1 General

11.1.1 The threshold is normally located at the extremity of a runway, if there are no obstacles penetrating above the approach surface. In some cases, however, due to local conditions it may be desirable to displace the threshold permanently (see below). When studying the location of a threshold, consideration should also be given to the height of the ILS reference datum and/or MLS approach reference datum and the determination of the obstacle clearance limits. (Specifications concerning the height of the ILS reference datum and MLS approach reference datum are given in Annex 10, Volume I.)

11.1.2 In determining that no obstacles penetrate above the approach surface, account should be taken of mobile objects (vehicles on roads, trains, etc.) at least within that portion of the approach area within 1 200 m longitudinally from the threshold and of an overall width of not less than 150 m.

11.2 Displaced threshold

11.2.1 If an object extends above the approach surface and the object cannot be removed, consideration should be given to displacing the threshold permanently.

11.2.2 To meet the obstacle limitation objectives of Chapter 4, the threshold should ideally be displaced down the runway for the distance necessary to provide that the approach surface is cleared of obstacles.

11.2.3 However, displacement of the threshold from the runway extremity will inevitably cause reduction of the landing distance available, and this may be of greater operational significance than penetration of the approach surface by marked and lighted obstacles. A decision to displace the threshold, and the extent of such displacement, should therefore have regard to an optimum balance between the considerations of clear approach surfaces and adequate landing distance. In deciding this question, account will need to be taken of the types of aeroplanes which the runway is intended to serve, the limiting visibility and cloud base conditions under which the runway will be used, the position of the obstacles in relation to the threshold and extended centre line and, in the case of a precision approach runway, the significance of the obstacles to the determination of the obstacle clearance limit.

11.2.4 Notwithstanding the consideration of landing distance available, the selected position for the threshold should not be such that the obstacle free surface to the threshold is steeper than 3.3 per cent where the code number is 4 or steeper than 5 per cent where the code number is 3.

11.2.5 In the event of a threshold being located according to the criteria for obstacle free surfaces in the preceding paragraph, the obstacle marking requirements of Chapter 6 should continue to be met in relation to the displaced threshold.

11.2.6 Depending on the length of the displacement, the RVR at the threshold could differ from that at the beginning of the runway for take-offs. The use of red runway edge lights with photometric intensities lower than the nominal value of 10 000 cd for white lights increases that phenomenon. The impact of a displaced threshold on take-off minima should be assessed by the appropriate authority.

11.2.7 Provisions in BAS, regarding marking and lighting of displaced thresholds and some operational recommendations can be found in 5.2.4.9, 5.2.4.10, 5.3.5.5, 5.3.8.1, 5.3.9.7, 5.3.10.3, 5.3.10.7 and 5.3.12.6.

17. Signal area

A signal area need be provided only when it is intended to use visual ground signals to communicate with aircraft in flight. Such signals may be needed when the aerodrome does not have an aerodrome control tower or an aerodrome flight information service unit, or when the aerodrome is used by aeroplanes not equipped with radio. Visual ground signals may also be useful in the case of failure of two-way radio communication with aircraft. It should be recognized, however, that the type of information which may be conveyed by visual ground signals should normally be available in AIPs or NOTAM. The potential need for visual ground signals should therefore be evaluated before deciding to provide a signal area.

18. Rescue and firefighting services

18.1 **Administration**

18.1.1 The rescue and firefighting service at an aerodrome should be under the administrative control of the aerodrome management, which should also be responsible for ensuring that the service provided is organized, equipped, staffed, trained and operated in such a manner as to fulfil its proper functions.

18.1.2 In drawing up the detailed plan for the conduct of search and rescue operations in accordance with 4.2.1 of Annex 12 — Search and Rescue, the aerodrome management should coordinate its plans with the relevant rescue coordination centres to ensure that the respective limits of their responsibilities for an aircraft accident within the vicinity of an aerodrome are clearly delineated.

18.1.3 Coordination between the rescue and firefighting service at an aerodrome and public protective agencies, such as local fire brigade, police force, coast guard and hospitals, should be achieved by prior agreement for assistance in dealing with an aircraft accident.

18.1.4 A grid map of the aerodrome and its immediate vicinity should be provided for the use of the aerodrome services concerned. Information concerning topography, access roads and location of water supplies should be indicated. This map should be conspicuously posted in the control tower and fire station, and available on the rescue and firefighting vehicles and such other supporting vehicles required to respond to an aircraft accident or incident. Copies should also be distributed to public protective agencies as desirable.

18.1.5 Coordinated instructions should be drawn up detailing the responsibilities of all concerned and the action to be taken in dealing with emergencies. The appropriate authority should ensure that such instructions are promulgated and observed.

18.2 Training

The training curriculum should include initial and recurrent instruction in at least the following areas:

a) airport familiarization;
b) aircraft familiarization;
c) rescue and firefighting personnel safety;
d) emergency communications systems on the aerodrome, including aircraft fire-related alarms;
e) use of the fire hoses, nozzles, turrets and other appliances required for compliance with Chapter 9, 9.2;
f) application of the types of extinguishing agents required for compliance with Chapter 9, 9.2;
g) emergency aircraft evacuation assistance;
h) firefighting operations;
i) adaptation and use of structural rescue and firefighting equipment for aircraft rescue and firefighting;
j) dangerous goods;
k)familiarization with firefighters' duties under the aerodrome emergency plan; and l) protective clothing and respiratory protection.

18.3 Level of protection to be provided

18.3.1 In accordance with Chapter 9, 9.2, aerodromes should be categorized for rescue and firefighting purposes and the level of protection provided should be appropriate to the aerodrome category.

18.3.2 However, Chapter 9, 9.2.3, permits a lower level of protection to be provided for a limited period where the number of movements of the aeroplanes in the highest category normally using the aerodrome is less than 700 in the busiest consecutive three months. It is important to note that the concession included in 9.2.3 is applicable only where there is a wide range of difference between the dimensions of the aeroplanes included in reaching 700 movements.

18.4 Rescue equipment for difficult environments

18.4.1 Suitable rescue equipment and services should be available at an aerodrome where the area to be covered by the service includes water, swampy areas or other difficult environment that cannot be fully served by conventional wheeled vehicles. This is particularly important where a significant portion of approach/departure operations takes place over these areas.

18.4.2 The rescue equipment should be carried on boats or other vehicles such as helicopters and amphibious or air cushion vehicles, capable of operating in the area concerned. The vehicles should be so located that they can be brought into action quickly to respond to the areas covered by the service.

18.4.3 At an aerodrome bordering the water, the boats or other vehicles should preferably be located on the aerodrome, and convenient launching or docking sites provided. If these vehicles are located off the aerodrome, they should preferably be under the control of the aerodrome rescue and firefighting service or, if this is not practicable, under the control of another competent public or private organization working in close coordination with the aerodrome rescue and firefighting service (such as police, military services, harbour patrol or coast guard).

18.4.4 Boats or other vehicles should have as high a speed as practicable so as to reach an accident site in minimum time. To reduce the possibility of injury during rescue operations, water jet-driven boats are preferred to water propellerdriven boats unless the propellers of the latter boats are ducted. Should the water areas to be covered by the service be frozen for a significant period of the year, the equipment should be selected accordingly. Vehicles used in this service should be equipped with life rafts and life preservers related to the requirements of the larger aircraft normally using the aerodrome, with two-way radio communication, and with floodlights for night operations. If aircraft operations during periods of low visibility are expected, it may be necessary to provide guidance for the responding emergency vehicles.

18.4.5 The personnel designated to operate the equipment should be adequately trained and drilled for rescue services in the appropriate environment.

18.5 Facilities

18.5.1 The provision of special telephone, two-way radio communication and general alarm systems for the rescue and firefighting service is desirable to ensure the dependable transmission of essential emergency and routine information. Consistent with the individual requirements of each aerodrome, these facilities serve the following purposes:

a) direct communication between the activating authority and the aerodrome fire station in order to ensure the prompt alerting and dispatch of rescue and firefighting vehicles and personnel in the event of an aircraft accident or incident;
b) direct communication between the rescue and firefighting service and the flight crew of an aircraft in emergency;
c) emergency signals to ensure the immediate summoning of designated personnel not on standby duty;
d) as necessary, summoning essential related services on or off the aerodrome; and
e) maintaining communication by means of two-way radio with the rescue and firefighting vehicles in attendance at an aircraft accident or incident.

18.5.2 The availability of ambulance and medical facilities for the removal and after-care of casualties arising from an aircraft accident should receive the careful consideration of the appropriate authority and should form part of the overall emergency plan established to deal with such emergencies.

19. Operators of vehicles

19.1 The authorities responsible for the operation of vehicles on the movement area should ensure that the operators are properly qualified. This may include, as appropriate to the driver's function, knowledge of:

a) the geography of the aerodrome;
b) aerodrome signs, markings and lights;
c) radiotelephone operating procedures;
d) terms and phrases used in aerodrome control including the ICAO spelling alphabet;
e) rules of air traffic services as they relate to ground operations;
f) airport rules and procedures; and
g)specialist functions as required, for example, in rescue and firefighting.

19.2 The operator should be able to demonstrate competency, as appropriate, in:

a) the operation or use of vehicle transmit/receive equipment;
b) understanding and complying with air traffic control and local procedures;
c) vehicle navigation on the aerodrome; and
d) special skills required for the particular function.

In addition, as required for any specialist function, the operator should be the holder of a State driver's licence, a State radio operator's licence or other licences.

19.3 The above should be applied as is appropriate to the function to be performed by the operator, and it is not necessary that all operators be trained to the same level, for example, operators whose functions are restricted to the apron.

19.4 If special procedures apply for operations in low visibility conditions, it is desirable to verify an operator's knowledge of the procedures through periodic checks.

20. The ACN-PCN method of reporting pavement strength

20.1 Overload operations

20.1.1 Overloading of pavements can result either from loads too large, or from a substantially increased application rate, or both. Loads larger than the defined (design or evaluation) load shorten the design life, whilst smaller loads extend it. With the exception of massive overloading, pavements in their structural behaviour are not subject to a particular limiting load above which they suddenly or catastrophically fail. Behaviour is such that a pavement can sustain a definable load for an expected number of repetitions during its design life. As a result, occasional minor overloading is acceptable, when expedient, with only limited loss in pavement life expectancy and relatively small acceleration of pavement deterioration. For those operations in which magnitude of overload and/or the frequency of use do not justify a detailed analysis, the following criteria are suggested:
a) for flexible pavements, occasional movements by aircraft with ACN not exceeding 10 per cent above the reported PCN should not adversely affect the pavement;
b) for rigid or composite pavements, in which a rigid pavement layer provides a primary element of the structure, occasional movements by aircraft with ACN not exceeding 5 per cent above the reported PCN should not adversely affect the pavement;
c) if the pavement structure is unknown, the 5 per cent limitation should apply; and
d) the annual number of overload movements should not exceed approximately 5 per cent of the total annual aircraft movements.

20.1.2 Such overload movements should not normally be permitted on pavements exhibiting signs of distress or failure. Furthermore, overloading should be avoided during any periods of thaw following frost penetration, or when the strength of the pavement or its subgrade could be weakened by water. Where overload operations are conducted, the appropriate authority should review the relevant pavement condition regularly, and should also review the criteria for overload operations periodically since excessive repetition of overloads can cause severe shortening of pavement life or require major rehabilitation of pavement.

20.2 **ACNs for several aircraft types**

For convenience, several aircraft types currently in use have been evaluated on rigid and flexible pavements founded on the four subgrade strength categories in Chapter 2, 2.6.6 b), and the results tabulated in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Part 3.

21. Autonomous runway incursion warning system (ARIWS)

Note 1—These autonomous systems are generally quite complex in design and operation and, as such, deserve careful consideration by all levels of the industry, from the regulating authority to the end user. This guidance is offered to provide a more clear description of the system(s) and offer some suggested actions required in order to properly implement these system(s) at an aerodrome in any State.

Note 2—The Manual on the Prevention of Runway Incursion (Doc 9870) presents different approaches for the prevention of runway incursion.

21.1 General description

21.1.1 The operation of an ARIWS is based upon a surveillance system which monitors the actual situation on a runway and automatically returns this information to warning lights at the runway (take-off) thresholds and entrances. When an aircraft is departing from a runway (rolling) or arriving at a runway(short final), red warning lights at the entrances will illuminate, indicating that it is unsafe to enter or cross the runway. When an aircraft is aligned on the runway for take-off and another aircraft or vehicle enters or crosses the runway, red warning lights will illuminate at the threshold area, indicating that it is unsafe to start the take-off roll.

21.1.2 In general, an ARIWS consists of an independent surveillance system (primary radar, multilateration, specialized cameras, dedicated radar, etc.) and a warning system in the form of extra airfield lighting systems connected through a processor which generates alerts independent from ATC directly to the flight crews and vehicle operators.

21.1.3 An ARIWS does not require circuit interleaving, secondary power supply or operational connection to other visual aid systems.

21.1.4 In practice, not every entrance or threshold needs to be equipped with warning lights. Each aerodrome will have to assess its needs individually depending on the characteristics of the aerodrome. There are several systems developed offering the same or similar functionality.

21.2 Flight crew actions

21.2.1 It is of critical importance that flight crews understand the warning being transmitted by the ARIWS system. Warnings are provided in near real-time, directly to the flight crew because there is no time for ―relay‖ types of communications. In other words, a conflict warning generated to ATS which must then interpret the warning, evaluate the situation and communicate to the aircraft in question, would result in several seconds being taken up where each second is critical in the ability to stop the aircraft safely and prevent a potential collision. Pilots are presented with a globally consistent signal which means "STOP IMMEDIATELY" and must be taught to react accordingly. Likewise, pilots receiving an ATS clearance to take-off or cross a runway, and seeing the red light array, must STOP and advise ATS that they aborted/stopped because of the red lights. Again, the criticality of the timeline involved is so tight that there is no room for misinterpretation of the signal. It is of utmost importance that the visual signal be consistent around the world.

21.2.2 It must also be stressed that the extinguishing of the red lights does not, in itself, indicate a clearance to proceed. That clearance is still required from air traffic control. The absence of red warning lights only means that potential conflicts have not been detected.

21.2.3 In the event that a system becomes unserviceable, one of two things will occur. If the system fails in the extinguished condition, then no procedural changes need to be accomplished. The only thing that will happen is the loss of the automatic, independent warning system. Both ATS operations and flight crew procedures (in response to ATS clearances) will remain unchanged.

21.2.4 Procedures should be developed to address the circumstance where the system fails in the illuminated condition. It will be up to the ATS and/or aerodrome operator to establish those procedures depending on their own circumstances. It must be remembered that flight crews are instructed to ―STOP‖ at all red lights. If the affected portion of the system, or the entire system, is shut off the situation is reverted to the extinguished scenario described in 21.2.3.

21.3 Aerodromes

21.3.1 An ARIWS does not have to be provided at all aerodromes. An aerodrome considering the installation of such a system may wish to assess its needs individually, depending on traffic levels, aerodrome geometry, ground taxi patterns, etc. Local user groups such as the Local Runway Safety Team (LRST) can be of assistance in this process. Also, not every runway or taxiway needs to be equipped with the lighting array(s), and not every installation requires a comprehensive ground surveillance system to feed information to the conflict detection computer.

21.3.2 Although there may be local specific requirements, some basic system requirements are applicable to all ARIWS:

a) the control system and energy power supply of the system must be independent from any other system in use at the aerodrome, especially the other parts of the lighting system;

b) the system must operate independently from ATS communications;

c) the system must provide a globally accepted visual signal that is consistent and instantly understood by crews; and

d) local procedures should be developed in the case of malfunction or failure of a portion of, or the entire system.

21.4 Air traffic services

21.4.1 The ARIWS is designed to be complementary to normal ATS functions, providing warnings to flight crews and vehicle operators when some conflict has been unintentionally created or missed during normal aerodrome operations. The ARIWS will provide a direct warning when, for example, ground control or tower (local) control has provided a clearance to hold short of a runway but the flight crew or vehicle operator has "missed" the hold short portion of their clearance and tower has issued a take-off or landing clearance to that same runway, and the non- read back by the flight crew or vehicle operator was missed by air traffic control.

21.4.2 In the case where a clearance has been issued and a crew reports a non-compliance due to ―red lights‖, or aborting because of ―red lights‖, then it is imperative that the controller assess the situation and provide additional instructions as necessary. It may well be that the system has generated a false warning or that the potential incursion no longer exists; however, it may also be a valid warning. In any case, additional instructions and/or a new clearance need to be provided. In a case where the system has failed, then procedures will need to be put into place as described in 21.2.3 and

21.4.3 In no case should the illumination of the ARIWS be dismissed without confirmation that, in fact, there is no conflict. It is worth noting that there have been numerous incidents avoided at aerodromes with such systems installed. It is also worth noting that there have been false warnings as well, usually as a result of the calibration of the warning software, but in any case, the potential conflict existence or non-existence must be confirmed.

21.4.4 While many installations may have a visual or audio warning available to ATS personnel, it is in no way intended that ATS personnel be required to actively monitor the system. Such warnings may assist ATS personnel in quickly assessing the conflict in the event of a warning and help them to provide appropriate further instructions, but the ARIWS should not play an active part in the normal functioning of any ATS facility.

21.4.5 Each aerodrome where the system is installed will develop procedures depending upon its unique situation. Again, it must be stressed that under no circumstances should pilots or operators be instructed to ―cross the red lights‖. As indicated previously, the use of local runway safety teams can greatly assist in this development process.

21.5 Promulgation of information

21.5.1 Information on the characteristics and status of an ARIWS at an aerodrome are promulgated in the AIP section AD 2.9, and its status updated as necessary through NOTAM or ATIS in compliance with 2.9.1 of this Annex.

21.5.2 Aircraft operators are to ensure that flight crews' documentation include procedures regarding ARIWS and appropriate guidance information, in compliance with Annex 6, Part I.

21.5.3 Aerodromes may provide additional sources of guidance on operations and procedures for their personnel, aircraft operators, ATS and third-party personnel who may have to deal with an ARIWS.

22. Taxiway design guidance for minimizing the potential for runway incursions

22.1 Good aerodrome design practices can reduce the potential for runway incursions while maintaining operating efficiency and capacity. The following taxiway design guidance may be considered to be part of a runway incursion prevention programme as a means to ensure that runway incursion aspects are addressed during the design phase for new runways and taxiways. Within this focused guidance, the prime considerations are to limit the number of aircraft or vehicles entering or crossing a runway, provide pilots with enhanced unobstructed views of the entire runway, and correct taxiways identified as hot spots as much as possible.

22.2 The centre line of an entrance taxiway should be perpendicular to the runway centre line, where possible. This design principle provides pilots with an unobstructed view of the entire runway, in both directions, to confirm that the runway and approach are clear of conflicting traffic before proceeding towards the runway. Where the taxiway angle is such that a clear unobstructed view, in both directions, is not possible, consideration should be given to providing a perpendicular portion of the taxiway immediately adjacent to the runway to allow for a full visual scan by the pilots prior to entering or crossing a runway.

22.3 For taxiways intersecting with runways, avoid designing taxiways wider than recommended in this Annex. This design principle offers improved recognition of the location of the runway holding position and the accompanying sign, marking and lighting visual cues.

22.4 Existing taxiways wider than recommended in this Annex, can be rectified by painting taxi side stripe markings to the recommended width. As far as practicable, it is preferable to redesign such locations properly rather than to repaint such locations.

22.5 Multi-taxiway entrances to a runway should be parallel to each other and should be distinctly separated by an unpaved area. This design principle allows each runway holding location an earthen area for the proper placement of accompanying sign, marking and lighting visual cues at each runway holding position. Moreover, the design principle eliminates the needless costs of building unusable pavement and as well as the costs for painting taxiway edge markings to indicate such unusable pavement. In general, excess paved areas at runway holding positions reduce the effectiveness of sign, marking and lighting visual cues.

22.6 Build taxiways that cross a runway as a single straight taxiway. Avoid dividing the taxiway into two after crossing the runway. This design principle avoids constructing "Y-shaped" taxiways known to present risk of runway incursions.

22.7 If possible, avoid building taxiways that enter at the mid-runway location. This design principle helps to reduce the collision risks at the most hazardous locations (high energy location) because normally departing aircraft have too much energy to stop, but not enough speed to take-off, before colliding with another errant aircraft or vehicle.

22.8 Provide clear separation of pavement between a rapid exit taxiway and other non-rapid taxiways entering or crossing a runway. This design principle avoids two taxiways from overlapping each other to create an excessive paved area that would confuse pilots entering a runway.

22.9 Avoid the placement of different pavement materials (asphalt and cement concrete) at or near the vicinity of the runway holding position, as far as practicable. This design principle avoids creating visual confusion as to the actual location of the runway holding position.

22.10 Many aerodromes have more than one runway, notably paired parallel runways (two runways on one side of the terminal), which creates a difficult problem in that either on arrival or departure an aircraft is required to cross a runway.
Under such a configuration, the safety objective here is to avoid or at least keep to a minimum the number of runway crossings. This safety objective may be achieved by constructing a "perimeter taxiway". A perimeter taxiway is a taxi route that goes around the end of a runway, enabling arrival aircraft (when landings are on outer runway of a pair) to get to the terminal, or departure aircraft (when departures are on outer runway of a pair) to get to the runway, without either crossing a runway or conflicting with a departing or approaching aircraft.

22.11 A perimeter taxiway would be designed according to the following criteria:

a) Sufficient space is required between the landing threshold and the taxiway centre line where it crosses under the approach path to enable the critical taxiing aircraft to pass under the approach without penetrating any approach surface.
b) The jet blast impact of aircraft taking off should be considered in consultation with aircraft manufacturers; the extent of take-off thrust should be evaluated when determining the location of a perimeter taxiway.
c) The requirement for a runway end safety area, as well as possible interference with landing systems and other navigation aids should also be taken into account. For example, in the case of an ILS, the perimeter taxiway should be located behind the localiser antenna, not between the localiser antenna and the runway, due to the potential for severe ILS disturbance, noting that this is harder to achieve as the distance between the localizer and the runway increases.
d) Human factors issues should also be taken into account. Appropriate measures should be put in place to assist pilots to distinguish between aircraft that are crossing the runway and those that are safely on a perimeter taxiway.

23. Aerodrome mapping data

23.1 Introduction

Chapter 2, 2.1.2 and 2.1.3, relate to the provision of aerodrome mapping data. The aerodrome mapping data features are collected and made available to the aeronautical information services for aerodromes designated by States with consideration of the intended applications. These applications are closely tied to an identified need and operational use where the application of the data would provide a safety benefit or could be used as mitigation of a safety concern.

23.2 Applications

23.2.1 Aerodrome mapping data include aerodrome geographic information that supports applications which improve the user's situational awareness or supplement surface navigation, thereby increasing safety margins and operational efficiency. With appropriate data element accuracy, these data sets support collaborative decision-making, common situational awareness and aerodrome guidance applications. The data sets are intended to be used in the following air navigation applications:

a) on-board positioning and route awareness including moving maps with own aircraft position, surface guidance and navigation;

b) traffic awareness including surveillance and runway incursion detection and alerting (such as, respectively, in A-SMGCS levels 1 and 2);

c)ground positioning and route awareness including situational displays with aircraft and vehicles position and taxi route, surface guidance and navigation (such as A-SMGCS levels 3 and 4);

d) facilitation of aerodrome-related aeronautical information, including NOTAMs;

e) resource and aerodrome facility management; and

f) aeronautical chart production.

23.2.2 The data may also be used in other applications such as training/flight simulators and on- board or ground enhanced vision systems (EVS), synthetic vision systems (SVS) and combined vision systems (CVS).

23.3 Determination of aerodromes to be considered for collection of aerodrome mapping data features

In order to determine which aerodromes may make use of applications requiring the collection of aerodrome mapping data features, the following aerodrome characteristics may be considered:

- safety risks at the aerodrome;
- visibility conditions;
- aerodrome layout; and
- traffic density.

Note.— Further guidance on aerodrome mapping data can be found in the Airport Services Manual, Part 8 — Airport Operational Service (Doc 9137).

ATTACHMENT B. OBSTACLE LIMITATION SURFACES

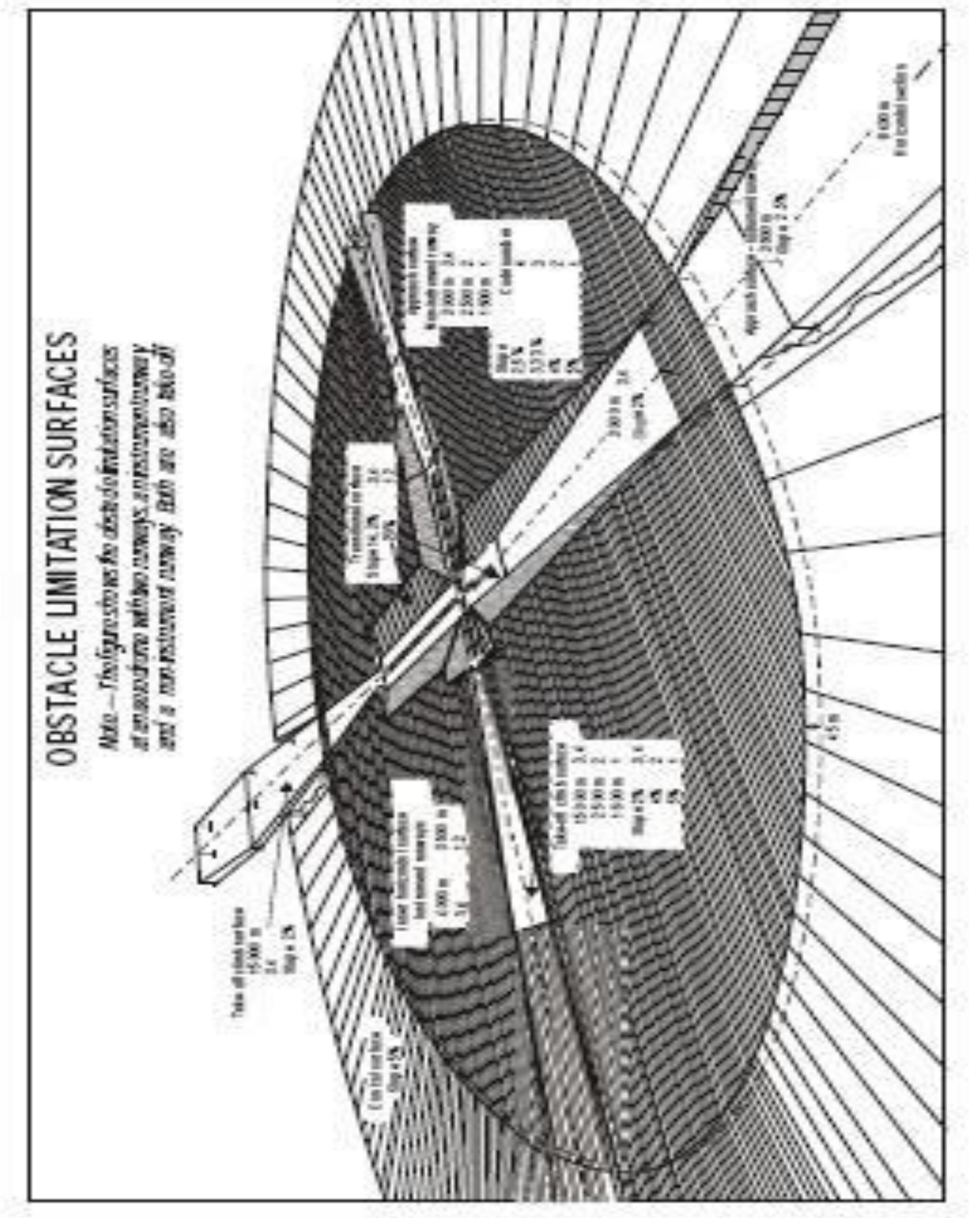


Figure B-1

LIMITED INDEX OF SIGNIFICANT SUBJECTS

* Those specifications which relate to the daily operation of an aerodrome as compared with those which relate to its design or facilities to be provided.